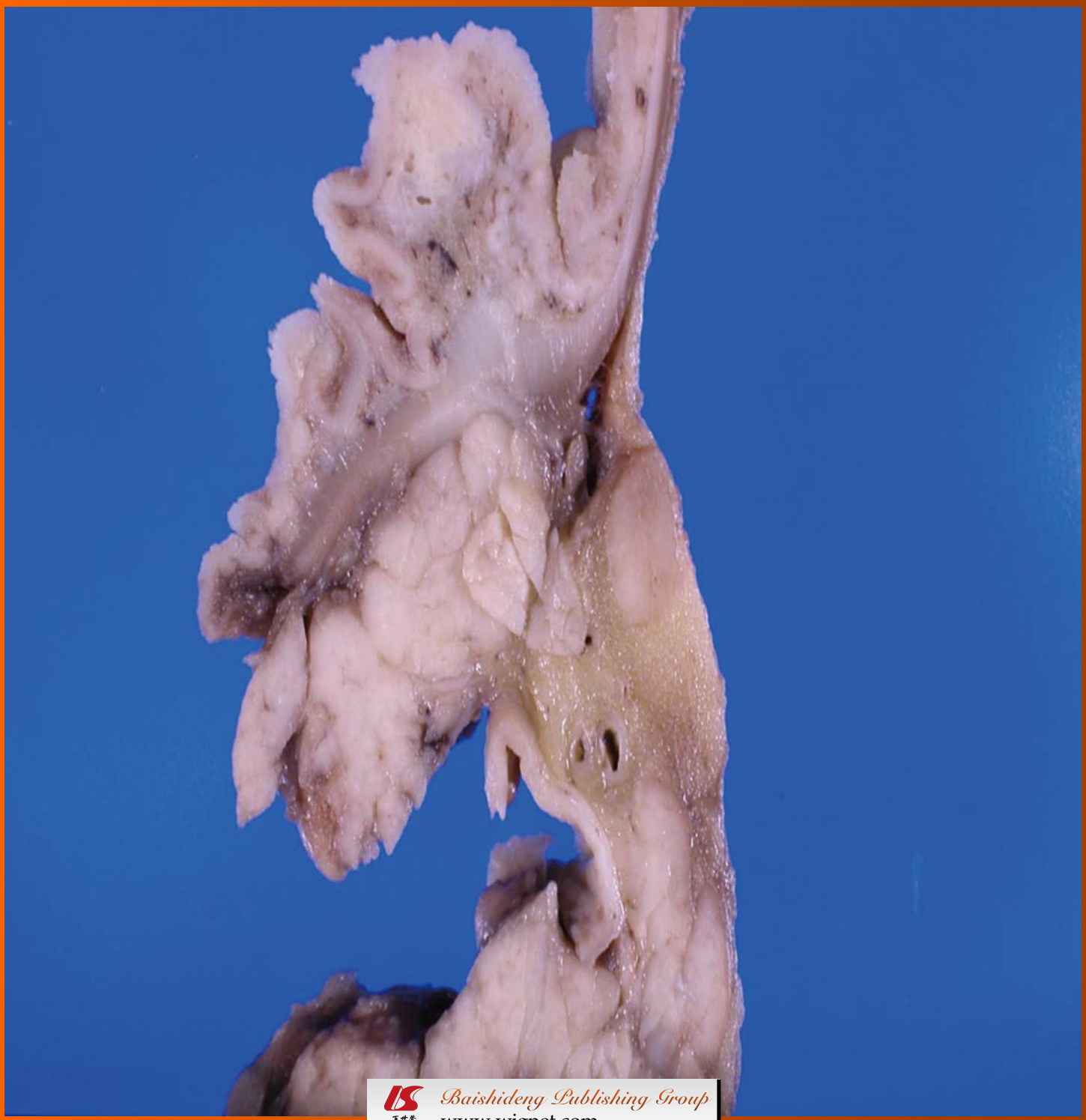
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

World Journal of *Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology*

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 88-154



Baishideng Publishing Group
www.wjgnet.com

WJGP World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of gastrointestinal pathophysiology

Editorial Board

2010-2015

The *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology* Editorial Board consists of 296 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in gastrointestinal pathophysiology. They are from 39 countries, including Argentina (1), Australia (5), Austria (1), Belgium (6), Brazil (7), Brunei Darussalam (1), Canada (15), China (18), Croatia (1), Czech Republic (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (1), Estonia (1), France (5), Germany (17), Greece (2), Hungary (2), India (7), Iran (1), Ireland (1), Israel (3), Italy (23), Japan (21), Lebanon (1), Malaysia (1), México (2), Netherlands (3), Norway (1), Poland (3), Russia (1), Singapore (3), South Korea (7), Spain (12), Sweden (6), Switzerland (2), Turkey (2), Ukraine (1), United Kingdom (7), and United States (101).

Denmark

Lars Arendt Nielsen, *Aalborg*
Jingbo Zhao, *Aalborg*

Egypt

Ram I Mahato, *Memphis*

Estonia

Enn Seppet, *Tartu*

France

Bruno Bonaz, *Grenoble Cedex*
Pierre M Dechelotte, *Rouen*
Jean-Paul Lallès, *Saint Gilles*
Pascale Plaisancié, *Lyon*
Michelina Plateroti, *Lyon*

Germany

Carsten Bergmann, *Ingelheim*
Elke Cario, *Essen*
Nikolaus Gassler, *Aachen*
Werner Hartwig, *Heidelberg*
Marion Hewicker-Trautwein, *Hannover*
Tobias Keck, *Freiburg im Breisgau*
Peter Malfertheiner, *Magdeburg*
Christoph Michalski, *Munich*
Andreas Klaus Nüssler, *Munich*
Christian Pehl, *Vilsbiburg*
Peter Schemmer, *Heidelberg*
Marc P Stemmler, *Freiburg*
Frank Tacke, *Aachen*
Sya Nomna Ukena, *Hannover*
Brigitte Vollmar, *Rostock*
Thomas Michael Wex, *Magdeburg*
Margot Zöller, *Heidelberg*

Greece

Stelios F Assimakopoulos, *Patras*
George V Papatheodoridis, *Athens*

Hungary

Mária Bagyánszki, *Szeged*
Mihály Boros, *Szeged*

India

Anil Kumar Agarwal, *Delhi*
Uday Bandyopadhyay, *Kolkata*
Chandra Kanti Chakraborti, *Orissa*
Nilesh M Dagia, *Maharashtra*
Rajeev Garg, *Punjab*
Chandra P Sharma, *Karnataka*
Prabhakar R Veerareddy, *Andhra Pradesh*

Iran

Shahram Shahabi, *Urmia*

Ireland

Stephen J Keely, *Dublin*

Israel

Yosefa Avraham, *Jerusalem*
Yaakov M Kendler, *Tel-Hashomer*
Nachum Vaisman, *Tel Aviv*

Italy

Rosaria Acquaviva, *Catania*
Alessandro Antonelli, *Pisa*
Salvatore Auricchio, *Naples*
Claudio Bassi, *Verona*
Massimo Bellini, *Cisanello-Pisa*
Alfio Brogna, *Catania*
Giuseppe Calamita, *Bari*
Ignazio Castagliuolo, *Padova*
Enrico S Corazziari, *Roma*
Francesco Cresi, *Torino*
Rosario Cuomo, *Napoli*
Mario Milco D'Elios, *Florence*
Walter Fries, *Messina*
Marco Gobbetti, *Bari*
Basilisco Guido, *Milano*
Enzo Ierardi, *Foggia*
Pietro Invernizzi, *Rozzano*
Anna Kohn, *Rome*
F. Marotta, *Milano*
Cristiano Rumio, *Milan*
Edoardo Vincenzo Savarino, *Genoa*
Annamaria Staiano, *Naples*
Claudio Tiribelli, *Trieste*

Japan

Akihiro Asakawa, *Kagoshima*
Hisashi Aso, *Aoba-ku Sendai*
Hideki Iijima, *Osaka*
Hajime Isomoto, *Nagasaki*
Haruki Kitazawa, *Sendai*
Xiao Kang Li, *Tokyo*
Kazuyuki Matsushita, *Chuo-ku*
Reiko Miyazawa, *Gunma*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Atsushi Nakajima, *Kanagawa*
Tsutomu Nishida, *Osaka*
Koji Nomoto, *Tokyo*
Shouji Shimoyama, *Tokyo*
Ikuo Shoji, *Hyogo*
Hidekazu Suzuki, *Tokyo*
Toru Takahashi, *Okayama*
Yoshihisa Takahashi, *Tokyo*
Takato Ueno, *Kurume*
Yoshiyuki Ueno, *Sendai*
Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Nara*

Lebanon

Costantine Fouad Daher, *Byblos*

Malaysia

Andrew CS Boon, Perak

México

José M De la Roca-Chiapas, *Gto*
MR Huerta-Franco, *Guanajuato*

Netherlands

Aldo Grefhorst, *Groningen*
Pieter Job Tanis, *Amsterdam*
Cornelis FM Sier, *Leiden*

Norway

Anne Marie Bakke, *Oslo*

Poland

Stanisław Jan Konturek, *Kraków*
Agata Mulak, *Wroclaw*
Napoleon Waszkiewicz, *Choroszcz*

Russia

Ludmila Filaretova, *Petersburg*

Singapore

Madhav Bhatia, *Singapore*
Brian KP Goh, *Singapore*
Cliff KS Ong, *Singapore*

South Korea

Ho Jae Han, *Gwangju*
Ki-Baik Hahm, *Incheon*
Myung Haing Cho, *Seoul*
Chang-Duk Jun, *Gwangju*
Sang Geon Kim, *Seoul*
Won-Jae Lee, *Seoul*
Kwan Kyu Park, *Daegu*

Spain

Raquel Abalo, *Alcorcón*
Marçal P Anglada, *Barcelona*
Fernando Azpiroz, *Barcelona*
Ramón Bataller, *Barcelona*
Dariao A Castroviejo, *Granada*
Joan Clària, *Barcelona*
Maria T Martin, *Barcelona*
Vicente Martinez, *Barcelona*
Jose M Matés, *Málaga*
María Eugenia Sáez, *Seville*
Yolanda Sanz, *Valencia*
Maria D Yago, *Granada*

Sweden

Frida Fåk, *Gothenburg*
Gunnar FA Flemström, *Uppsala*
Bob Roger Olsson, *Göteborg*
Peter Thelin Schmidt, *Stockholm*
Xiao-Feng Sun, *Linköping*
Henrik Thorlacius, *Malmö*

Switzerland

Jyrki J Eloranta, *Zurich*
Catherine Pastor, *Geneva*

Turkey

Mehmet Bektas, *Ankara*
Muammer Karadeniz, *Manisa*

Ukraine

Oksana S Zayavhkivska, *Lviv*

United Kingdom

Fabian Michel Angeli, *Cambridge*
Geoffrey Burnstock, *London*
Janice Elizabeth Drew, *Scotland*
Girish Gupte, *Birmingham*
Jamie Murphy, *London*
Vadim Sumbayev, *Kent*
Andrea Varro, *Liverpool*

United States

Gianfranco D Alpini, *Temple*
Shrikant Anant, *Oklahoma City*
Gyorgy Baffy, *Massachusetts*
Michael T Bailey, *Columbus*
Kim Elaine Barrett, *San Diego*
Marc D Basson, *Lansing*
David H Berger, *Texas*
Qiang Cai, *Atlanta*
Wei-Biao Cao, *Rhode Island*
Subhash C Chauhan, *Sioux Falls*
Jiande Chen, *Texas*
Tao-Sheng Chen, *Memphis*
Mashkoor A Choudhry, *Illinois*
Parimal Chowdhury, *Arkansas*
Robert Thomas Cormier, *Duluth*
Srinivasan Dasarathy, *Cleveland*
Edwin A Deitch, *New Jersey*
Dan Alan Dixon, *Columbia*
H Henry Dong, *Pittsburgh*
Hui Dong, *Carolina*
Ashkan Farhadi, *Irvine*
Jenifer I Fenton, *East Lansing*
Alessandro Fichera, *Chicago*
Mitchell P Fink, *Pennsylvania*
Robert Armour Forse, *Omaha*
Stroud Glaser, *Texas*
Gondim F de AA Gondim, *Louis*
Yan-Fang Guan, *Ohio*
Hartmut Jaeschke, *Kansas*
Robert Thomas Jensen, *Los Angeles*
Chris Kevil, Los *Angeles*
Pawel R Kiela, *Arizona*
Tammy Lyn Kindel, *Ohio*
Gordana Kosutic, *Durham*
Ashok Kumar, *Detroit*
Muriel Larauche, *Los Angeles*
Felix W Leung, *North Hills*
Suthat Liangpunsakul, *Indiana*
Feng-Xin Lu, *Massachusetts*
Guang-Xiang Luo, *Lexington*
Akhil Maheshwari, *Birmingham*
Kenneth Maiese, *New York*
Adhip PN Majumdar, *Michigan*
José E Manautou, *Connecticut*
Craig J McClain, *Kentucky*
Beverley GV Meerveld, *Oklahoma City*
Douglas S Merrell, *Bethesda*
Murielle Mimeault, *Omaha*
Emiko Mizoguchi, *Boston*
Adam Moeser, *North Carolina*
Roger Klein Moreira, *New York*
Shuji Ogino, *Boston*
Mary Francis Otterson, *Wisconsin*
Chung Owyang, *Michigan*
Helieh S Oz, *Lexingtons*
Nicholas C Popescu, *Bethesda*
Chao Qin, *Oklahoma*
P Rafiee, *Wisconsin*
Sigrid A Rajasekaran, *Wilmington*
Ramesh M Ray, *Tennessee*
Yehuda Ringel, *Chapel Hill*
Richard A Rippe, *Maryland*
Chantal A Rivera, *Los Angeles*
Paul A Rufo, *Boston*
Sanjaya K Satapathy, *New Hyde Park*
Anthony Senagore, *Los Angeles*
Muhammad Y Sheikh, *Fresno*
Le Shen, *Illinois*
Frank A Simmen, *Little Rock*
Steven Mitchell Singer, *Washington*
Shailinder Jit Singh, *Washington*
Nicholas James Skill, *Indianapolis*
Adam Jan Smolka, *Charleston*
Ned Snyder, *Texas*
Rhonda Frances Souza, *Dallas*
Stuart Jon Spechler, *Texas*
Catia Sternini, *California*
Yvette Taché, *California*
Xiao-Di Tan, *Chicago*
Paul Daniel Terry, *Atlanta*
Jennifer S Tirnauer, *Farmington*
George C Tsokos, *Massachusetts*
Vic Velanovich, *Detroit*
Estela Wajcberg, *Cranford*
Arnold Wald, *Madison*
Li-Xin Wang, *Los Angeles*
Christian Weber, *Boston*
Jackie D Wood, *Columbus*
Guo-Yao Wu, *Texas*
Christian Wunder, *Bethesda*
Zuo-Liang Xiao, *Cleveland*
Guo-Rong Xu, *New Jersey*
Jay A Yelon, *Valhalla*
Chiang John YL, *Ohio*
Shao-Yong Yu, *Pennsylvania*
Yana Zavros, *Ohio*
Joerg Zehetner, *Los Angeles*
Jian X Zhang, *North Carolina*
Zhi Zhong, *Charleston*
Qing Zhu, *Maryland*

WJGP

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Contents

Bimonthly Volume 2 Number 6 December 15, 2011

Contents

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology
Volume 2 Number 6 December 15, 2011

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology (*World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol*, *WJGP*, online ISSN 2150-5330, DOI: 10.4291), is a bimonthly, open-access, peer-reviewed journal supported by an editorial board of 296 experts in gastrointestinal pathophysiology from 39 countries.

The major task of *WJGP* is to report rapidly the most recent results in basic and clinical research on gastrointestinal pathophysiology, including all aspects of normal or abnormal function of the gastrointestinal tract, hepatobiliary system, and pancreas. *WJGP* specifically covers growth and development, digestion, secretion, absorption, metabolism and motility relative to the gastrointestinal organs, as well as immune and inflammatory processes, and neural, endocrine and circulatory control mechanisms that affect these organs. This journal will also report new methods and techniques in gastrointestinal pathophysiological research.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

LAUNCH DATE
April 15, 2010

SPONSOR
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd.,
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: baishideng@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

EDITING
Editorial Board of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology*,
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: wjgp@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

PUBLISHING
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited,
Room 1701, 17/F, Henan Building,
No.90 Jaffe Road, Wanchai,
Hong Kong, China
Fax: +852-3115-8812
Telephone: +852-5804-2046
E-mail: baishideng@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

SUBSCRIPTION
Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Ltd.,
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: baishideng@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

ONLINE SUBSCRIPTION
One-Year Price 108.00 USD

PUBLICATION DATE
December 15, 2011

ISSN
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

EDITORIAL OFFICE
Xing Wu, Assistant Director
World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,
Beijing 100025, China
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893
E-mail: wjgp@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080008.htm.

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.88

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 88-92
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

EDITORIAL

Adenomyoma of the small intestine

Yoshihisa Takahashi, Toshio Fukusato

Yoshihisa Takahashi, Toshio Fukusato, Department of Pathology, Teikyo University School of Medicine, 2-11-1 Kaga, Itabashi-ku, Tokyo 173-8605, Japan
Author contributions: Takahashi Y wrote the manuscript; Fukusato T checked and revised the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Yoshihisa Takahashi, MD, Department of Pathology, Teikyo University School of Medicine, 2-11-1 Kaga, Itabashi-ku, Tokyo 173-8605, Japan. ytakaha-tky@umin.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-3-39641211 Fax: +81-3-39649622
Received: May 13, 2011 Revised: September 28, 2011
Accepted: October 5, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

Adenomyoma of the gastrointestinal tract is a rare benign tumor-like lesion. The small intestine is the second most frequent location, usually in the periampullary area, but the lesion also occurs in the jejunum and ileum. While adenomyoma of the Vaterian system is primarily diagnosed in adults, more than half of reported cases of jejunal and ileal adenomyoma have been diagnosed in pediatric patients. Adenomyoma of the periampullary area usually presents with biliary obstruction or abdominal pain, whereas jejunal and ileal adenomyoma usually presents with intussusception or is incidentally discovered during surgery or autopsy. Since endoscopic and radiological examination yields uncharacteristic findings, histopathological evaluation is important in adenomyoma diagnosis. Pathologically, adenomyoma consists of glandular structures of various sizes and interlacing smooth muscle bundles that surround the glandular elements. The pathogenesis of adenomyoma is generally considered to be either a form of hamartoma or a pancreatic heterotopia. Although limited resection is considered the most effective treatment, pancreaticoduodenectomy is often performed when the lesion occurs in the periampullary area due to preoperative misdiagnosis as a carcinoma. It is, therefore, important that clinicians and pathologists maintain current knowledge of the disease to avoid inaccurate diagnosis, which could lead to unnecessary surgery.

Key words: Adenomyoma; Small intestine; Biliary obstruction; Intussusception; Hamartoma; Heterotopic pancreas

Peer reviewers: Mikihiro Fujiya, Associate Professor, Department of Medicine, Asahikawa Medical University, 2-1-1-1, Midorigaoka-higashi, Asahikawa 0788510, Japan; Jens Hoeppner, Dr., Department of Surgery, University of Freiburg, Hugstetter Str. 55, Freiburg 79106, Germany

Takahashi Y, Fukusato T. Adenomyoma of the small intestine. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 88-92 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/88.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.88

INTRODUCTION

Adenomyoma of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, also referred to as a myoepithelial hamartoma, adenomyomatous hamartoma or foregut choristoma, is a benign tumor-like lesion histologically characterized by glandular structures lined by cuboidal to tall columnar epithelium and surrounded by bundles of smooth muscle. It occurs mainly in the pyloric region of the stomach[1]. The small intestine is the second most frequent location, usually in the periampullary area, but it also occurs in the jejunum and ileum. The lesion is very rare and there have been only a few reports of case series of periampullary adenomyoma[2,3]. Most cases of jejunal and ileal adenomyoma have been reported as single case reports and, to the best of our knowledge, there have been only 26 reported cases[4-26].

Although the pathogenesis of adenomyoma remains unclear, it is hypothesized to be either a form of hamartoma or an incomplete heterotopic pancreas. As endoscopic and radiological examination yields uncharacteristic findings, histopathological evaluation is important in adenomyoma diagnosis. It is important that clinicians and pathologists maintain current knowledge of the disease

to avoid making inaccurate diagnoses that may lead to unnecessary surgery. To aid in the acquisition of this important knowledge, we review the clinical and pathological features of adenomyoma of the small intestine and discuss its pathogenesis.

CLINICAL FEATURES

Epidemiology

As mentioned above, adenomyoma of the small intestine is rare, especially that occurring in the small intestine distal to the duodenum. The actual incidence is unclear because very few cases have been reported. A further complicating factor in determining its true incidence is that its reportedly low incidence may be partly attributed to underreporting or nonrecognition of the condition by both surgeons and pathologists[17]. We have diagnosed 3 cases of asymptomatic adenomyoma of the jejunum or ileum at autopsy in our institution within the past 8 years; this fact suggests that its incidence is higher than suspected.

In the investigation of 13 cases of adenomyoma of the Vaterian system treated by extensive surgery, the patient age ranged from 38 to 78 years (mean 63 years) and the male-to-female ratio was 6:7[2]. On the other hand, there have been only 26 reported cases of jejunal and ileal adenomyoma[4-26] and the patient age ranges from 2 d to 82 years (mean 25 years), including 15 pediatric patients and 11 adult patients. The male-to-female ratio is approximately 2:1. The lesion occurs 2 to 3 times more frequently in the ileum than in the jejunum. One lesion was found in a Meckel diverticulum[17].

Symptoms and signs

Symptoms of adenomyoma of the GI tract depend on the location of the lesion and patient age. Adenomyoma of the periampullary area usually presents with biliary obstruction (obstructive jaundice) or abdominal pain, symptoms that recur after sphincterotomy[2]. Several cases have been incidentally detected during systemic examination for other diseases. One reported case presented with acute recurrent pancreatitis[27].

Jejunal and ileal adenomyoma of pediatric patients usually presents with intussusception, but 1 reported case presented with intestinal obstruction[6]. In adult patients, intussusception is an infrequent complication, with many reported cases having been incidentally detected during surgery for other diseases or during autopsy. Several cases have presented with GI bleeding (melena)[15,25].

Endoscopy

On endoscopic examination, adenomyoma of the duodenum is detected as a submucosal tumor-like nodule covered by normal mucosa. Although it is generally difficult to detect jejunal or ileal lesion by endoscopy, 1 reported case of adenomyoma of the proximal jejunum was identified by push enteroscopy[25].

Radiographic findings

Adenomyoma of the GI tract may be detected as an enhancing polypoid lesion by abdominal computed tomography (CT)[21]. Periampullary adenomyoma may be detected as an abnormal shadow on endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)[28]. When ampullary adenomyoma causes stenosis or obstruction of the biliary tract, bile duct dilatation can be detected by abdominal ultrasonography, abdominal CT, ERCP and magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography; bile duct obstruction can be confirmed by percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography.

PATHOLOGICAL FEATURES

Gross appearance

Grossly, adenomyoma of the GI tract is an intramural nodule covered by mucosa and it protrudes into the lumen (Figure 1A and B). The diameter of adenomyoma in reported cases ranges from 0.6 cm to 4.5 cm.

Microscopic findings

Histologically, adenomyoma of the small intestine mainly occupies the submucosa (Figure 2) and often extends into the muscularis propria. The lesion consists of glandular structures of various sizes and interlacing smooth muscle bundles surrounding the glandular elements (Figure 3). Cystically dilated glands are usually observed. The glandular structures are lined by cuboidal to tall columnar epithelium with basally oriented nuclei. Goblet cells are occasionally interspersed (Figure 4A) and we previously reported a case in which Paneth cells were also observed (Figure 4B)[23]. Those glands are surrounded by interlacing smooth muscle bundles. Myofibroblasts and fibroblasts may also proliferate[2,3]. Both the epithelial and smooth muscle cells lack nuclear atypia. Pancreatic acini and islet tissue are not present. Pathological diagnosis by biopsy specimen is usually difficult, partly because the lesion mainly occupies the submucosa.

Immunohistochemical staining

Immunohistochemically, the glandular element of adenomyoma of the small intestine is positive for cytokeratin (CK) 7 (Figure 5A) and negative for CK 20 (Figure 5B)[23,26], while normal intestinal epithelial cells around the lesion are negative for CK 7 and positive for CK 20. The glandular epithelial cells of the lesion do not express CDX-2, a marker of intestinal mucosal epithelium[26]. The smooth muscle cells surrounding the glandular elements are positive for α-smooth muscle actin and desmin (Figure 6)[20,23].

Differential diagnosis

Differential diagnoses of adenomyoma of the small intestine include enteritis cystica profunda, pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis, adenocarcinoma and hamartomatous polyp in Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. Cysts of enteritis

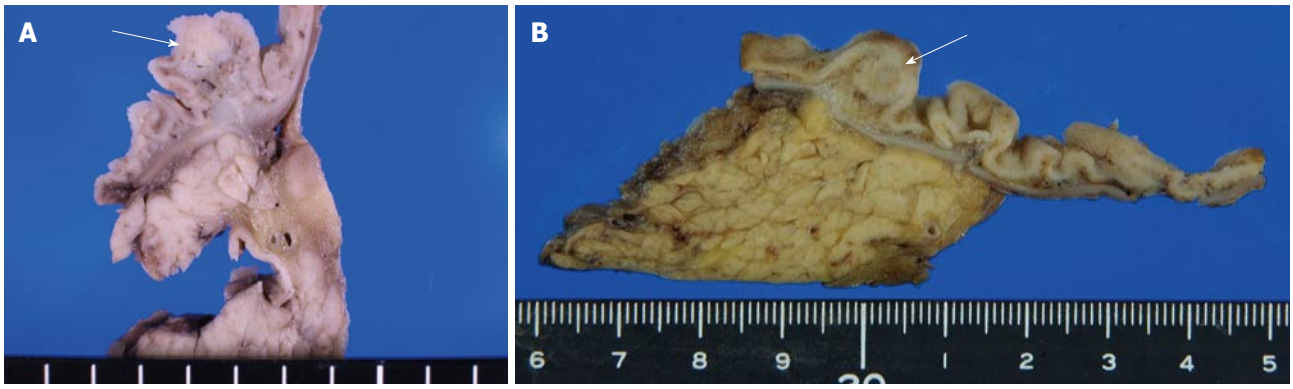


Figure 1 Gross appearance of adenomyoma of the periampullary region. The lesions are observed as intramural nodules covered by mucosa and they protrude into the lumen (A, B, arrows).

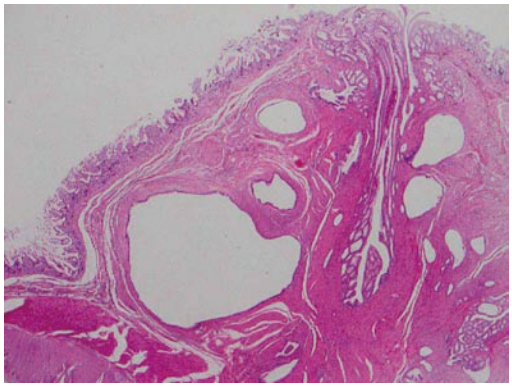


Figure 2 Low-power view of adenomyoma of the small intestine. A nodular lesion mainly occupies the submucosa (hematoxylin and eosin stain, × 10).

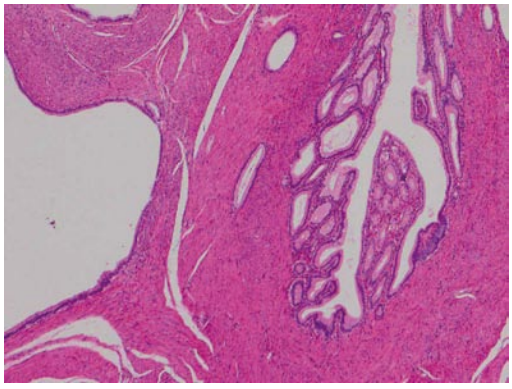


Figure 3 High-power view of adenomyoma of the small intestine. The lesion consists of glandular structures of various sizes and interlacing smooth muscle bundles (hematoxylin and eosin stain, × 40).

cystica profunda are not surrounded by smooth muscle bundles. In pneumatosis cystoides intestinalis, the cysts contain gas and are lined by multinucleated giant cells, while the glands and cysts of the adenomyoma are lined by epithelial cells. The characteristics of adenomyoma that differentiate it from adenocarcinoma include the absence of cellular atypia and desmoplastic stroma and the presence of smooth muscle bundles surrounding the glands and cysts. In Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, the essential feature is branching cores of muscular fibers derived from the muscularis mucosae and covered by normal mucosa, while adenomyoma is located in submucosa and/or muscularis propria.

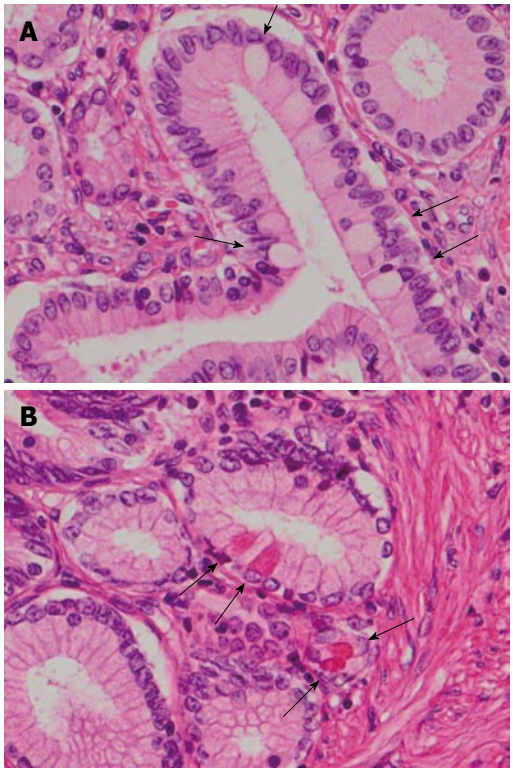


Figure 4 Appearance of goblet cells (A, arrows) and Paneth cells (B, arrows) in the intestinal adenomyoma (hematoxylin and eosin stain, × 400).

TREATMENT AND PROGNOSIS

Endoscopic or surgical limited resection of the lesion is considered the most effective treatment for adenomyoma of the periampullary region. However, pancreaticoduodenectomy is often performed because the lesion is frequently preoperatively misdiagnosed as a carcinoma. Intraoperative frozen section diagnosis is useful to avoid excessive surgery.

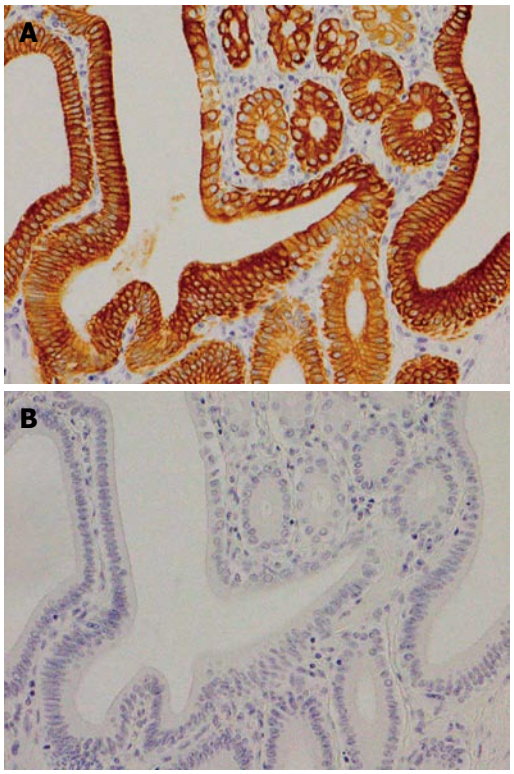


Figure 5 Results of immunohistochemical staining for cytokeratin 7 and cytokeratin 20. The glandular element of the lesion is positive for cytokeratin 7 (A) and negative for cytokeratin 20 (B) (× 200).

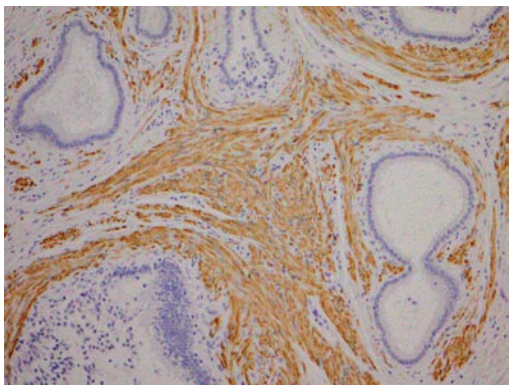


Figure 6 Results of immunohistochemical staining for desmin. Smooth muscle cells surrounding the glandular elements are positive for desmin (× 100).

A partial enterectomy or simple resection of the lesion is performed for a jejunal or ileal adenomyoma complicated by intussusception. When it is not complicated by intussusception, simple resection of the lesion is sufficient treatment. Intraoperative frozen section diagnosis is also useful when the lesion exists in this location. As adenomyoma of the GI tract is a benign lesion, the prognosis for its treatment is very good.

Follow-up is considered to be a potential option for avoiding unnecessary surgery for benign adenomyoma, particularly in the jejunum and ileum, if the size of the lesion is small. Follow-up study may elucidate the natural course of the lesion.

PATHOGENESIS

As mentioned above, the pathogenesis of adenomyoma of the GI tract is generally considered either a form of a hamartoma or a pancreatic heterotopia, although this is not fully understood. The term "hamartoma" refers to an excessive but focal overgrowth of cells or tissues native to the organ in which it occurs, while the term "heterotopia" refers to a growth of microscopically normal cells or tissues in an abnormal location.

Gal *et al*[9] reported 3 cases of adenomyoma of the small intestine and suggested that "adenomyomas should be regarded as hamartomas of the GI tract" based on the fact that those cases contained goblet cells, argentaffin cells and smooth muscle stroma. Several authors reported cases with the transitional area between the epithelial component of the adenomyoma and epithelium of the overlying mucosa and considered it to be evidence that the epithelial component of the lesion originated from the epithelium of the small intestine[21,26].

In general, CK 7 is distributed in the pancreatic duct epithelium but is essentially absent in GI epithelium. On the other hand, CK 20 is distributed in the GI epithelium but is absent in pancreatic duct epithelium[29]. Accordingly, the pattern of cytokeratin expression [CK 7 (+), CK 20 (-)] of the glandular element of adenomyoma coincides with that of the pancreatic duct epithelium but not with that of the intestinal epithelium, thus supporting the heterotopic pancreas theory. This theory was further supported by Babál *et al*[30]'s detection of histochemical reactivities of the duodenal adenomyoma similar to the reactivities of duct epithelium in the neighboring pancreas, as well as Yao *et al*[17]'s reporting of a case of adenomyoma occurring in a Meckel diverticulum. In their examination of a case series of adenomyoma of the Vaterian system, Handra-Luca *et al*[2] identified that 3 of 13 cases were characterized by pancreatic heterotopias with both exocrine and endocrine pancreatic tissue being present in continuity with the adenomyoma.

In our opinion, the heterotopic pancreas theory regarding the lesion's pathogenesis might be more convincing than the hamartoma theory. The appearance of goblet cells and argentaffin cells might be explained by a metaplastic mechanism, while the presence of hyperplastic smooth muscle tissue might be explained by secondary muscle proliferation caused by a stimulus emanating from misplaced epithelium. We acknowledge that whether transition between the epithelial component of the lesion and the epithelium of the overlying mucosa is truly evidence of hamartomatous pathogenesis remains open to question. However, of course, further examinations are necessary to determine the pathogenesis of the lesion.

CONCLUSION

Adenomyoma of the GI tract is a rare benign tumor-like lesion whose pathogenesis remains not fully understood. When adenomyoma occurs in the Vaterian system, its

clinical differentiation from a carcinoma is difficult, often leading to a needless pancreaticoduodenectomy. To avoid unnecessary radical surgery, clinicians and pathologists should maintain current knowledge of the lesion and the most effective means of treatment.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Dr. Michiyo Higashi, Department of Human Pathology, Field of Oncology, Kagoshima University Graduate School of Medicine and Dental Sciences, for providing us with images of gross appearance of adenomyoma of the periampullary region.

REFERENCES

1 **Vandelli A**, Cariani G, Bonora G, Padovani F, Saragoni L, Dell'Amore D. Adenomyoma of the stomach. Report of a case and review of the literature. *Surg Endosc* 1993; **7**: 185-187
2 **Handra-Luca A**, Terris B, Couvelard A, Bonte H, Flejou JF. Adenomyoma and adenomyomatous hyperplasia of the Vaterian system: clinical, pathological, and new immunohistochemical features of 13 cases. *Mod Pathol* 2003; **16**: 530-536
3 **Higashi M**, Goto M, Saitou M, Shimizu T, Rousseau K, Batra SK, Yonezawa S. Immunohistochemical study of mucin expression in periampullary adenomyoma. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Sci* 2010; **17**: 275-283
4 **Clarke BE**. Myoepithelial hamartoma of the gastrointestinal tract: a report of eight cases with comment concerning genesis and nomenclature. *Arch Pathol* 1940; **30**: 143-152
5 **Schwartz SI**, Radwin HM. Myoepithelial hamartoma of the ileum causing intussusception. *AMA Arch Surg* 1958; **77**: 102-104
6 **Rosenmann E**, Maayan C, Lernau O. Leiomyomatous hamartosis with congenital jejunoileal atresia. *Isr J Med Sci* 1980; **16**: 775-779
7 **Gal R**, Kolkow Z, Nobel M. Adenomyomatous hamartoma of the small intestine: a rare cause of intussusception in an adult. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1986; **81**: 1209-1211
8 **Kim CJ**, Choe GY, Chi JG. Foregut choristoma of the ileum, (adenomyoma)--a case report. *Pediatr Pathol* 1990; **10**: 799-805
9 **Gal R**, Rath-Wolfson L, Ginzburg M, Kessler E. Adenomyomas of the small intestine. *Histopathology* 1991; **18**: 369-371
10 **Lamki N**, Woo CL, Watson AB, Kim HS. Adenomyomatous hamartoma causing ileoileal intussusception in a young child. *Clin Imaging* 1993; **17**: 183-185
11 **Chan YF**, Roche D. Adenomyoma of the small intestine in children. *J Pediatr Surg* 1994; **29**: 1611-1612
12 **Serour F**, Gorenstein A, Lipnitzky V, Zaidel L. Adenomyoma of the small bowel: a rare cause of intussusception in childhood. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1994; **18**: 247-249
13 **Gonzálvez J**, Marco A, Andújar M, Iñiguez L. Myoepithelial hamartoma of the ileum: a rare cause of intestinal intussusception in children. *Eur J Pediatr Surg* 1995; **5**: 303-304
14 **Hizawa K**, Iida M, Aoyagi K, Mibu R, Yao T, Fujishima M. Jejunal myoepithelial hamartoma associated with Gardner's syndrome: a case report. *Endoscopy* 1996; **28**: 727
15 **Tanaka N**, Seya T, Onda M, Kanazawa Y, Naitoh Z, Asano G, Hao K. Myoepithelial hamartoma of the small bowel: report of a case. *Surg Today* 1996; **26**: 1010-1013
16 **Yamagami T**, Tokiwa K, Iwai N. Myoepithelial hamartoma of the ileum causing intussusception in an infant *Pediatr Surg Int* 1997; **12**: 206-207
17 **Yao JL**, Zhou H, Roche K, Bangaru BS, Ginsburg H, Greco MA. Adenomyoma arising in a meckel diverticulum: case report and review of the literature. *Pediatr Dev Pathol* 2000; **3**: 497-500
18 **Ueyama N**, Kuwashima S, Nakayama A, Nakanishi K, Okuchi K, Kagoshima T, Nakajima Y. Ileal adenomyoma accompanied by primary peritonitis: report of a case. *Surg Today* 2001; **31**: 826-829
19 **Lee JS**, Kim HS, Jung JJ, Kim YB. Adenomyoma of the small intestine in an adult: a rare cause of intussusception. *J Gastroenterol* 2002; **37**: 556-559
20 **Mouravas V**, Koutsoumis G, Patoulias J, Kostopoulos I, Kottakidou R, Kallergis K, Kepertis C, Liolios N. Adenomyoma of the small intestine in children: a rare cause of intussusception: a case report. *Turk J Pediatr* 2003; **45**: 345-347
21 **Park HS**, Lee SO, Lee JM, Kang MJ, Lee DG, Chung MJ. Adenomyoma of the small intestine: report of two cases and review of the literature. *Pathol Int* 2003; **53**: 111-114
22 **Lo Bello Gemma G**, Corradino R, Cavuoto F, Motta M. Myoepithelial jejunal hamartoma causing small bowel intussusception and volvolus. *Radiol Med* 2003; **105**: 246-249
23 **Takahashi Y**, Fukushima J, Fukusato T, Mori S. Adenomyoma with goblet and Paneth cells of the ileum. *Pathol Res Pract* 2006; **202**: 549-553
24 **Ikegami R**, Watanabe Y, Tainaka T. Myoepithelial hamartoma causing small-bowel intussusception: a case report and literature review. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2006; **22**: 387-389
25 **Yu HC**, Lo GH, Lai KH, Hsu PI, Chen IS, Hsieh PP. Adenomyoma of the jejunum --- a rare cause of gastrointestinal bleeding. *J Chin Med Assoc* 2008; **71**: 96-99
26 **Qing X**, Petrie BA, Buslon V, French S. Adenomyoma of the jejunum. *Exp Mol Pathol* 2009; **86**: 127-130
27 **Kwon TH**, Park do H, Shim KY, Cho HD, Park JH, Lee SH, Chung IK, Kim HS, Park SH, Kim SJ. Ampullary adenomyoma presenting as acute recurrent pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 2892-2894
28 **Kayahara M**, Ohta T, Kitagawa H, Miwa K, Urabe T, Murata T. Adenomyomatosis of the papilla of Vater: a case illustrating diagnostic difficulties. *Dig Surg* 2001; **18**: 139-142
29 **Chu PG**, Weiss LM. Keratin expression in human tissues and neoplasms. *Histopathology* 2002; **40**: 403-439
30 **Babál P**, Zaviacic M, Danihel L. Evidence that adenomyoma of the duodenum is ectopic pancreas. *Histopathology* 1998; **33**: 487-488

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.93

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 93-99
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

EDITORIAL

Treatment strategy for gastric non-invasive intraepithelial neoplasia diagnosed by endoscopic biopsy

Tsutomu Nishida, Shusaku Tsutsui, Motohiko Kato, Takuya Inoue, Shunsuke Yamamoto, Yoshito Hayashi, Tomofumi Akasaka, Takuya Yamada, Shinichiro Shinzaki, Hideki Iijima, Masahiko Tsujii, Tetsuo Takehara

Tsutomu Nishida, Shusaku Tsutsui, Motohiko Kato, Takuya Inoue, Shunsuke Yamamoto, Yoshito Hayashi, Tomofumi Akasaka, Takuya Yamada, Shinichiro Shinzaki, Hideki Iijima, Masahiko Tsujii, Tetsuo Takehara, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Osaka University Graduate School of Medicine, 2-2 Yamadaoka, Suita, Osaka 565-0871, Japan

Author contributions: Nishida T wrote the manuscript; Nishida T, Tsusui S and Kato M researched the content; Inoue T, Yamamoto S, Hayashi Y, Akasaka T, Yamada T and Shinzaki S contributed equally to this work; Iijima H, Tsujii M and Takehara T provided scientific editing and assisted with writing the manuscript.

Correspondence to: Tetsuo Takehara, MD, PhD, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Clinical Research Building (K1), Osaka University Graduate School of Medicine, 2-2 Yamadaoka, Suita, Osaka 565-0871, Japan. takehara@gh.med.osaka-u.ac.jp

Telephone: +81-6-68793621 Fax: +81-6-68793629

Received: May 2, 2011 Revised: September 26, 2011
Accepted: October 3, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

Treatment strategies, whether as follow-up or "total incisional biopsy" for gastric noninvasive intraepithelial neoplasia diagnosed by examination of an endoscopic forceps biopsy specimen, are controversial due to problems associated with the diagnostic accuracy of endoscopic forceps biopsy and questions about the safety and efficacy of endoscopic treatment. Based on the histological findings of the biopsy specimen, it is difficult to differentiate between reactive or regenerative changes, inflammation and neoplastic changes, intraepithelial and invasive tumors. Therefore, gastric neoplasia diagnosed as noninvasive intraepithelial often develop into invasive carcinoma during follow-up. Recent advances in endoscopic modalities and treatment devices, such as image-enhanced endoscopy and high-frequency generators, may make endoscopic treatment, such as endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD), a therapeutic option for gastric intraepithelial neoplasia, including low-grade neoplasms. Future studies are required to evaluate whether ESD is a valid strategy for gastric intraepithelial neoplasm with regard to safety and cost effectiveness.

Key words: Gastric intraepithelial neoplasia; Adenoma; Dysplasia; Endoscopic submucosal dissection; Endoscopic mucosal resection; Endoscopic resection; Adenocarcinoma

Peer reviewers: Jennifer S Tirnauer, Assistant Professor, Center for Molecular Medicine, University of CT Health Center, Farmington, CT 06030-3101, United States; Ruben Hummelen, Dr., Department of Public Health, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam 3081HH, The Netherlands

Nishida T, Tsutsui S, Kato M, Inoue T, Yamamoto S, Hayashi Y, Akasaka T, Yamada T, Shinzaki S, Iijima H, Tsujii M, Takehara T. Treatment strategy for gastric non-invasive intraepithelial neoplasia diagnosed by endoscopic biopsy. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 93-99 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/93.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.93

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer is the second most common cause of death from cancer worldwide[1,2] and more than half of the world's gastric cancer cases arise in eastern Asia. Early gastric cancer (EGC) is typically small, asymptomatic and has a good prognosis[3,4], but advanced gastric cancer has higher mortality rate[5]. Therefore, early detection and treatment is important for reducing the gastric cancer mortality rate. In particular, early detection of EGC is important to improve the prognosis of patients with gastric cancer. Surveillance

with endoscopy and biopsy sampling is important in patients with premalignant lesions and may lead to the early detection of cancer[6].

Gastric intraepithelial dysplasia/adenomas are considered to be precancerous lesions with a variable clinical course[7,8]. The term intraepithelial dysplasia/adenoma, however, is complex and confusing because of the lack of a uniform classification regarding the features that differentiate between dysplasia/adenoma and EGC. Moreover, it is difficult to differentiate gastric epithelial dysplasia/adenoma and ECG using biopsy specimens because of the inaccuracy of obtaining a biopsy specimen from a malignant region of cancer in an adenoma. This diagnostic inconsistency leads to inappropriate treatment and often results in over- or under-treatment of gastric intraepithelial neoplasias.

In this editorial, we discuss clinical problems in making a diagnosis and treating gastric intraepithelial neoplasia lesions as premalignant.

CHANGES IN CLASSIFICATION FOR GASTRIC INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA

In the early 1980s, guidelines for the diagnosis and grading of gastric epithelial neoplasia were developed and a three-stage classification (mild, moderate and severe dysplasia) was proposed. The term "dys" means abnormal and "plasia" means growth; thus, dysplasia is the term for abnormal growth of epithelial cells. Dysplasia is generally defined as unequivocally neoplastic epithelium that may be associated with or develop into invasive adenocarcinoma[9-11]. On the other hand, lesions that most European and American pathologists identify as dysplasia are often considered adenocarcinoma in Japan because, according to the Japanese viewpoint, gastric carcinoma is diagnosed based on nuclear and structural atypia, even when invasion is absent. Therefore, the reports of many Japanese and western pathologists show considerable differences. Schlemper *et al*[12,13], however, reported that diagnoses based on nuclear and structural atypia are somewhat discrepant between biopsy and resection specimens. They concluded that this may be the reason for the relatively high incidence and good prognosis of gastric carcinoma in Japan compared to western countries. In addition, the term adenoma is applied mostly to macroscopically protruding or superficially elevated lesions in Europe and America but in Japan the term applies to all gross types of the lesions: flat, elevated and depressed.

This confusion has led to several classifications for the terminology between non-neoplastic changes and early invasive cancer[9,11,14-16]. In September 1998, approximately 30 pathologists from 12 countries met in Vienna just before the World Congress of Gastroenterology and reached a consensus on the terminology for gastrointestinal epithelial neoplasia, termed the Vienna classification[17]. In this classification, "high-grade adenoma/dysplasia", "non-invasive carcinoma (carcinoma *in situ*)" and "suspected invasive carcinoma" were clustered into a single category (category 4), termed "noninvasive high-grade neoplasia" to eliminate the diagnostic discrepancies between western and Japanese pathologists. Because these three diagnoses cannot be reproducibly distinguished and the treatment recommendation would be the same for each diagnosis, these lesions are considered to be premalignant lesions[18-20]. At the beginning of 2000, the Vienna classification was revised[21] and, for a similar reason, intramucosal carcinoma was added as a fourth subcategory of category 4, because it is often hard to determine whether there is invasion into the lamina propria and because from a therapeutic viewpoint, the distinction between any of the four subcategories is irrelevant. After the revised Vienna classification was introduced, agreement on the diagnosis improved to 80% for gastric lesions[22]. The practical difficulty for diagnosing gastric epithelial dysplasia, however, remains the interpretation by clinicians of the terminology used by pathologists. The use of the term dysplasia confuses clinicians because endoscopy and surgery are linked to legal and social problems and most western surgeons will not operate if pathologists do not clearly diagnose the dysplasia as cancer. Therefore, it is currently not feasible to eliminate the diagnoses of dysplasia in the gastric mucosa. The recently revised new World Health Organization classification of neoplasia of the gastrointestinal tract was published in 2010, in which the term dysplasia is described as "intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia)" with dysplasia in parentheses.

Description of intraepithelial neoplasia

Endoscopy is the most sensitive and specific diagnostic tool for gastric neoplasms[23]. It is possible to detect slight changes in color and architecture of the mucosal surface that suggest EGC, in particular, using high-resolution endoscopy[24] and narrow band imaging[25] with chromo endoscopy[26] such as indigo carmine solution. Not to miss a lesion of gastric intraepithelial neoplasia, we often use biopsy specimens as a golden standard for diagnosis. In some cases, we supplement by ultrasonographical assessments of the depth of invasion to judge the lesions that suggest EGC. Those biopsy specimens are diagnosed as below (Table 1).

Indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia - category 2 in the Vienna classification: Depending on the condition of a biopsy sample, particularly small biopsy specimens, it is occasionally difficult to distinguish whether a lesion is neoplastic or non-neoplastic, reactive or regenerative. A diagnosis of "indefinite for dysplasia" is not a strict biological entity but rather a temporary term that is necessary to keep the patient in follow-up and to obtain more biopsies to make a definitive diagnosis.

Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia - category 3 in the Vienna classification: Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia (LGIN) belongs to this category. This lesion shows a slightly modified mucosal architecture, includ-

Table 1 Definition of intraepithelial neoplasia

	Definition	
	Japanese view	Western view
Indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia	A temporary term It is difficult to distinguish whether a lesion is neoplastic or non-neoplastic, or reactive or regenerative	A temporary term
LGIN	Characterized by a slightly modified mucosal architecture, including the presence of tubular structures with budding and branching, papillary enfolding, crypt lengthening with serration and cystic changes	
HGIN	Characterized by an increasing architectural distortion with glandular crowding and prominent cellular atypia without stromal invasion	
Adenocarcinoma/carcinoma	Diagnosed on nuclear and structural atypia, even when invasion is absent[45]	Diagnosed when evident invasive growth of neoplastic epithelium into the lamina propria of the mucosa or beyond is observed[46]

LGIN: Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia; HGIN: High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

Table 2 Histological discrepancy rates between biopsy and endoscopic resection sample *n* (%)

Reports (yr)	Endoscopic biopsy	Resected specimens		Overall
		Underdiagnosis[1]	Overdiagnosis[2]	Discrepancy[3]
Yoon *et al*[47], 2006	Tubular adenoma	2/41 (4.9)	2/41 (4.9)	4/41 (9.8)
Jung *et al*[29], 2008	LGIN	31/74 (42)	-	-
	HGIN	36/40 (90)	2/40 (5)	38/40 (95)
Lee *et al*[48], 2010	IN	114/311 (37)	41/311 (13)	155/311 (50)
	Carcinoma	7/86 (8.1)	16/86 (19)	23/86 (26)
	Total	121/397 (30)	57/397 (14)	178/397 (45)
Kato *et al*[27], 2010	IN	255/468 (44)	4/468 (1.7)	259/468 (46)

[1]Underdiagnosis was defined as if endoscopic biopsy showed tubular adenoma/ intraepithelial neoplasia but resected specimens finally led to the diagnosis of adenocarcinoma/carcinoma; [2]Overdiagnosis was defined as if endoscopic biopsy showed tubular adenoma/intraepithelial neoplasia or adenocarcinoma/carcinoma but resected specimens finally led to the diagnosis of non-neoplastic, reactive, regenerative or tubular adenoma, respectively; [3]Discrepancy was defined as if endoscopic biopsy does not correspond with resected specimen. This can be calculated using resected specimen as a golden standard. LGIN: Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia; IN: Intraepithelial neoplasia; HGIN: High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

ing the presence of tubular structures with budding and branching, papillary enfolding, crypt lengthening with serration and cystic changes.

High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia - category 4.1 in the Vienna classification: There is increasing architectural distortion with glandular crowding and prominent cellular atypia. Tubules can be irregular in shape, with frequent branching, budding and intra-luminal bridges, but there is no stromal invasion. The pleomorphic nuclei show prominent amphophilic nucleoli and a loss of polarity. Increased proliferative activity is present throughout the epithelium.

Difficulty of accurate diagnosis based on biopsy

Endoscopic forceps biopsy is the gold standard for histological diagnosis of gastric epithelial neoplasia. A pathological diagnosis established by biopsy specimen, however, sometimes results in an "under-diagnosis" when compared with diagnosis established by resected specimens. The frequency of discrepant diagnoses between biopsy specimens and the corresponding resected specimens of the same lesions ranges widely in published reports (Table 2). At least, high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia (HGIN) may already have a high probability of a carcinoma. We recently reported that the under-diagnosis rate of intraepithelial neoplasia proven by biopsy was 44% (95% CI: 39%-49%). Moreover, in that study, there were 2 lesions (0.42%) of adenocarcinoma with submucosal invasion of more than 500 μm, one of which involved the lymphatic system[27]. The reasons for the difficulty in making an accurate diagnosis based on a biopsy specimen are as follows: (1)the structural atypia of both adenoma and well-differentiated adenocarcinoma is too subtle to detect in small biopsy specimens; (2) cancer sometimes exists focally in the lesion and a sampling error might occur; and (3) regeneration of atypia induced by gastritis induces histological modification (Figure 1). Recent reports tend to show a higher under-diagnosis rate between biopsy and endoscopic resection samples than previous studies. Moreover, active inflammation of the gastric mucosa infected by *Helicobacter pylori* may conceal neoplastic architectural distortion and lead to false negative results. We speculate that recent optical advances in endoscopy such as high-resolution endoscopy could lead to "stricter" indication criteria.

Advantage of endoscopic diagnosis

Some endoscopic findings have been reported to predict high-risk lesions for malignancy: (1) diameter > 20 mm; and (2) depressed macroscopic type[28]. Recently, Jung *et al*[29] reported that depressed type (OR, 4.1) and com-

Table 3 Histological follow-up studies of gastric intraepithelial neoplasia through mild to severe dysplasia

Reports (yr)	LGIN (including mild to moderate dysplasia)		HGIN (including severe dysplasia)	
	Detection of carcinoma *n* (%)	Interval (mean) *n* (%)	Detection of carcinoma	Interval (mean)
Saraga *et al*[49], 1987	1/64 (2)	4 yr	17/21 (81)	4 mo
Lansdown *et al*[46], 1990	0/7 (0)	-	11/13 (85)	5 mo
Rugge *et al*[50], 1991	12/69 (17)	1 yr	6/8 (75)	4 mo
Fertitta *et al*[51], 1993	7/30 (23)	10 mo	25/31 (81)	5 mo
Farinati *et al*[52], 1993	-	-	16/49 (33)[1]	-
Di Gregorio *et al*[53], 1993	6/89 (7)	2 yr	6/10 (60)	11 mo
Bearzi *et al*[54], 1994	8/81 (9.9)	-	27/44 (61)	-
Rugge *et al*[55], 1994	13/90 (14)	2 yr	14/18 (78)	9 mo
Kolodziejczyk *et al*[56], 1994	2/35[1] (5.7[2])	-	7/7 (100)	-
Kokkola *et al*[57], 1996	0/9 (0)	-	2/3 (67)	1.5 yr
Rugge *et al*[19], 2003	8/90 (8.9)	4 yr	11/16 (69)	34 mo
Yamada *et al*[58], 2004	0/38 (0)	-	1/10 (10)	54 mo
Park *et al*[59], 2008	3/26 (12)	58 mo[3]	1/1 (100)	58 mo[3]
Overall	60/628 (9.5)		145/231 (63)	

Proportion progressing to carcinoma and mean interval. [1]Moderate or severe; [2]Mild or moderate dysplasia; [3]Overall follow-up interval. LGIN: Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia; IN: Intraepithelial neoplasia; HGIN: High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

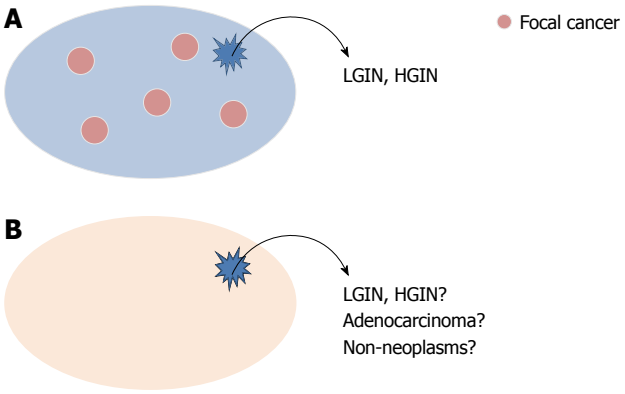


Figure 1 Reasons for the difficulty in making an accurate diagnosis based on a biopsy specimen. Cancer sometimes exists focally in the lesion and sampling error might occur (A); the structural atypia of both adenoma and well-differentiated adenocarcinoma is too subtle for small biopsy specimen. Moreover, regeneration of atypia induced by gastritis induces histological modification (B). LGIN: Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia; HGIN: High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

bined ulceration (OR, 5.6) were significant predictive factors correlated with cancer after endoscopic resection of gastric adenoma using multivariate analysis. For several decades, adenomatous polyps larger than 20 mm have been considered potentially malignant[30] and the rate of malignant transformations increased in accordance with an increase in the size. The depressed type is also reported to have more malignant potential. We, however, revealed that even patients with both smaller and elevated neoplasms had a greater than 40% under-diagnosis rate[27]. Similarly, cancer foci have been reported in hyperplastic polyps with a diameter of 5 mm[31]. Therefore, it is possible that a conventional endoscopic diagnosis based on size alone is not sufficient to make a precise preoperative diagnosis. Moreover, the surface appearance of an adenoma may also be an important factor for the diagnosis of malignancy[32].

Recent novel diagnostic modalities, including image-enhanced endoscopy, are useful for the differentiation of intraepithelial neoplasia[33]. Yao[33] reported that finding a white opaque substance on magnified endoscope with narrow band imaging differentiates intraepithelial neoplasia with a sensitivity of 94% and a specificity of 96%. Moreover, confocal laser endomicroscopy is reported to identify gastric superficial cancer/HGIN lesions with high validity and reliability compared to conventional white-light endoscopy and histological analysis for the final diagnosis[34]. Although image-enhanced endoscopy and confocal laser endomicroscopy are promising methods and modalities to improve the pre-therapeutic diagnostic accuracy of intraepithelial neoplasia, it is not yet clear whether they are clinically useful because of expert bias.

Treatment strategy for gastric intraepithelial neoplasia: follow-up or endoscopic resection?

There are two therapeutic principles for gastric intraepithelial neoplasias; one is to observe the intraepithelial neoplasia as a benign lesion unless biopsy specimens reveal an unequivocal malignant finding in consideration of the risk of treatment, and the other is to treat the intraepithelial neoplasia actively as a "diagnostic therapy". There are few guidelines to manage gastric intraepithelial neoplasia. Since 2000, the revised Vienna classification has helped to provide guidance for clinical management[17,21]. The category 4 lesions (high-grade dysplasia and intramucosal cancer) should be resected because they have a high potential for progression to adenocarcinoma[35]. On the other hand, there are no precise guidelines for the management of LGIN. Follow-up studies of HGIN reveal a striking high incidence, around 60%, of developing a carcinoma diagnosed within 1 year in the very short-term follow-up period (Table 3), supporting the validity of a treatment strategy for HGIN.

The natural course of gastric intraepithelial neoplasia

Table 4 Endoscopic submucosal dissection and endoscopic mucosal resection for early gastric cancer[60]

	EMR	ESD
Merits	Minimally invasive technique which is safe, convenient and efficacious	The advantage of achieving large en-bloc resections, not necessarily limited by lesion size
Demerits	Insufficient when treating larger lesions, especially larger that 15 mm	Requiring significant additional technical skills and a longer procedure time Prolonged learning curve
	High risks of local recurrence, especially when resections are not performed *en bloc* or when the resection margins are involved by tumor	A higher complication rate compared to standard EMR

ESD: Endoscopic submucosal dissection; EMR: Endoscopic mucosal resection.

remains unclear. In particular, previous prospective long-term follow-up studies indicated that the gastric cancer incidence in LGIN ranges around 10% (Table 3). This low risk of malignant transformation compared to HGIN may be due to the slowly progressive natural course of LGIN and supports the follow-up strategy. Our current knowledge based on initial intervention, not follow-up, indicates that over 40% of LGIN is diagnosed as adenocarcinoma after resection[27]. This under-diagnosis rate may be higher than that in previous reports. In addition to optical advances in endoscopy, we speculated that the reason for our result was that we used endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD), not endoscopic mucosal resection (EMR), because an ESD sample has an adequate tumor-free margin; in other words, it is easier to evaluate the atypical structures even if there is less nuclear atypia. Furthermore, we found two cases with submucosal cancers that required radical gastrectomy. These facts mean that even LGIN might not only be a premalignant lesion, but also a lesion that already contains cancer foci and a follow-up strategy might miss the chance for endoscopic therapy. Most LGIN progression to carcinoma, however, is generally low. Repeated endoscopic examination with biopsies burdens the patient with physiological, psychological and financial strains, although few reports discuss these points. Taken together, we consider that initial interventional strategy might be one option, even for LGIN if it is safer with an acceptable range and higher cost effectiveness.

EMR or ESD

Table 4 lists the merit and demerit of both EMR and ESD. EMR with a snare allows for a more accurate histopathological diagnosis than forceps biopsy because the lesion can be resected as a large piece. Previous prospective studies indicate that EMR provides higher diagnostic accuracy than forceps biopsy and the histopathology and complications are within expected norms; based on these studies, EMR is recommended by several reports for diagnosis[36-39]. EMR is limited, however, in that it sometimes results in a multiple piecemeal resection. Multiple piecemeal resection is associated with a specimen burning effect that interferes with an accurate pathological diagnosis. Additionally, a local recurrence may occur, with a reported incidence of approximately 10%[37]. The ESD-related complication rate is relatively low, based on a multicenter study of more than 1000 cases with gastric neoplasm[40].

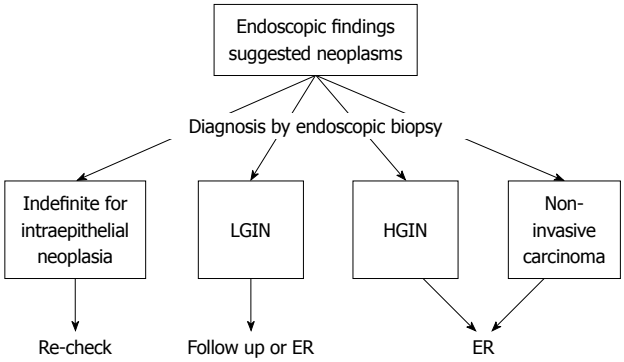


Figure 2 Treatment strategy for gastric non-invasive intraepithelial neoplasia diagnosed by endoscopic biopsy as a treatment flowchart (our opinion). LGIN: Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia; HGIN: High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia; ER: Endoscopic resection.

ESD allows for a more secure resection of larger lesions[41,42], resulting in a more accurate diagnosis because the margin of resected sample is larger than that for EMR. Although ESD requires greater skill, causes more complications, such as perforation, and has a longer procedure duration[41-44], in our recent study, the complication rate of ESD for gastric intraepithelial neoplasms was 5.4% for bleeding and 4.3% for perforation and the complete *en bloc* resection rate was 97%[27]. These rates are almost equivalent to those found in our multicenter study of more than 1000 cases with gastric neoplasm[40], although the perforation rate was only slightly more frequent than that reported for EMR. In detail, all patients with perforation were treated successfully with endoscopic clipping alone and the serious complication rate was only 0.45%. Therefore, the indication of ESD for LGIN, which is considered to be clinically less malignant, is controversial. Future use of ESD for LGIN requires further validation.

CONCLUSION

Endoscopic forceps biopsy is insufficient for a definitive diagnosis and therapeutic planning in patients with gastric intraepithelial neoplasia. Endoscopic resection should be considered as not only definitive treatment but also a procedure for a precise histological diagnosis for lesions initially assessed as gastric intraepithelial neoplasia by for-

ceps biopsy specimens. ESD may be a therapeutic option for gastric intraepithelial neoplasia for the purpose of total incisional biopsy. Finally, we have shown the treatment strategy for gastric non-invasive intraepithelial neoplasia diagnosed by endoscopic biopsy as a treatment flowchart (our opinion) (Figure 2). However, we still need to clarify the issue of evaluating the validity as to whether or not to follow-up or ER for LGIN diagnosed by endoscopic biopsy. A prospective study to clarify this is now planned.

REFERENCES

1 **Parkin DM**, Bray FI, Devesa SS. Cancer burden in the year 2000. The global picture. *Eur J Cancer* 2001; **37** Suppl 8: S4-S66
2 **Parkin DM**. International variation. *Oncogene* 2004; **23**: 6329-6340
3 **Uedo N**, Iishi H, Tatsuta M, Ishihara R, Higashino K, Takeuchi Y, Imanaka K, Yamada T, Yamamoto S, Yamamoto S, Tsukuma H, Ishiguro S. Longterm outcomes after endoscopic mucosal resection for early gastric cancer. *Gastric Cancer* 2006; **9**: 88-92
4 **Everett SM**, Axon AT. Early gastric cancer in Europe. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 142-150
5 **Cervantes A**, Roselló S, Roda D, Rodríguez-Braun E. The treatment of advanced gastric cancer: current strategies and future perspectives. *Ann Oncol* 2008; **19** Suppl 5: v103-v107
6 **Leung WK**, Wu MS, Kakugawa Y, Kim JJ, Yeoh KG, Goh KL, Wu KC, Wu DC, Sollano J, Kachintorn U, Gotoda T, Lin JT, You WC, Ng EK, Sung JJ. Screening for gastric cancer in Asia: current evidence and practice. *Lancet Oncol* 2008; **9**: 279-287
7 **Correa P**, Cuello C, Duque E. Carcinoma and intestinal metaplasia of the stomach in Colombian migrants. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1970; **44**: 297-306
8 **Rokkas T**, Filipe MI, Sladen GE. Detection of an increased incidence of early gastric cancer in patients with intestinal metaplasia type III who are closely followed up. *Gut* 1991; **32**: 1110-1113
9 **Morson BC**, Sobin LH, Grundmann E, Johansen A, Nagayo T, Serck-Hanssen A. Precancerous conditions and epithelial dysplasia in the stomach. *J Clin Pathol* 1980; **33**: 711-721
10 **Riddell RH**, Goldman H, Ransohoff DF, Appelman HD, Fenoglio CM, Haggitt RC, Ahren C, Correa P, Hamilton SR, Morson BC. Dysplasia in inflammatory bowel disease: standardized classification with provisional clinical applications. *Hum Pathol* 1983; **14**: 931-968
11 **Ming SC**, Bajtai A, Correa P, Elster K, Jarvi OH, Munoz N, Nagayo T, Stemmerman GN. Gastric dysplasia. Significance and pathologic criteria. *Cancer* 1984; **54**: 1794-1801
12 **Schlemper RJ**, Itabashi M, Kato Y, Lewin KJ, Riddell RH, Shimoda T, Sipponen P, Stolte M, Watanabe H, Takahashi H, Fujita R. Differences in diagnostic criteria for gastric carcinoma between Japanese and western pathologists. *Lancet* 1997; **349**: 1725-1729
13 **Schlemper RJ**, Kato Y, Stolte M. Well-differentiated adenocarcinoma or dysplasia of the gastric epithelium: rationale for a new classification system. *Verh Dtsch Ges Pathol* 1999; **83**: 62-70
14 **Takagi K**, Kumakura K, Sugano H, Nakamura K. [Polypoid lesions of the stomach--with special reference to atypical epithelial lesions]. *Gan No Rinsho* 1967; **13**: 809-817
15 **Grundmann E**. Histologic types and possible initial stages in early gastric carcinoma. *Beitr Pathol* 1975; **154**: 256-280
16 **Goldstein NS**, Lewin KJ. Gastric epithelial dysplasia and adenoma: historical review and histological criteria for grading. *Hum Pathol* 1997; **28**: 127-133
17 **Schlemper RJ**, Riddell RH, Kato Y, Borchard F, Cooper HS, Dawsey SM, Dixon MF, Fenoglio-Preiser CM, Fléjou JF, Geboes K, Hattori T, Hirota T, Itabashi M, Iwafuchi M, Iwashita A, Kim YI, Kirchner T, Klimpfinger M, Koike M, Lauwers GY, Lewin KJ, Oberhuber G, Offner F, Price AB, Rubio CA, Shimizu M, Shimoda T, Sipponen P, Solcia E, Stolte M, Watanabe H, Yamabe H. The Vienna classification of gastrointestinal epithelial neoplasia. *Gut* 2000; **47**: 251-255
18 **de Vries AC**, van Grieken NC, Looman CW, Casparie MK, de Vries E, Meijer GA, Kuipers EJ. Gastric cancer risk in patients with premalignant gastric lesions: a nationwide cohort study in the Netherlands. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 945-952
19 **Rugge M**, Cassaro M, Di Mario F, Leo G, Leandro G, Russo VM, Pennelli G, Farinati F. The long term outcome of gastric non-invasive neoplasia. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1111-1116
20 **Whiting JL**, Sigurdsson A, Rowlands DC, Hallissey MT, Fielding JW. The long term results of endoscopic surveillance of premalignant gastric lesions. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 378-381
21 **Stolte M**. The new Vienna classification of epithelial neoplasia of the gastrointestinal tract: advantages and disadvantages. *Virchows Arch* 2003; **442**: 99-106
22 **Schlemper RJ**, Kato Y, Stolte M. Review of histological classifications of gastrointestinal epithelial neoplasia: differences in diagnosis of early carcinomas between Japanese and Western pathologists. *J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36**: 445-456
23 **Hosokawa O**, Tsuda S, Kidani E, Watanabe K, Tanigawa Y, Shirasaki S, Hayashi H, Hinoshita T. Diagnosis of gastric cancer up to three years after negative upper gastrointestinal endoscopy. *Endoscopy* 1998; **30**: 669-674
24 **Lambert R**, Saito H, Saito Y. High-resolution endoscopy and early gastrointestinal cancer...dawn in the East. *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 232-237
25 **Uedo N**, Fujishiro M, Goda K, Hirasawa D, Kawahara Y, Lee JH, Miyahara R, Morita Y, Singh R, Takeuchi M, Wang S, Yao T. Role of narrow band imaging for diagnosis of early-stage esophagogastric cancer: current consensus of experienced endoscopists in Asia-Pacific region. *Dig Endosc* 2011; **23** Suppl 1: 58-71
26 **Kiesslich R**, Neurath MF. Magnifying chromoendoscopy for the detection of premalignant gastrointestinal lesions. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2006; **20**: 59-78
27 **Kato M**, Nishida T, Tsutsui S, Komori M, Michida T, Yamamoto K, Kawai N, Kitamura S, Zushi S, Nishihara A, Nakanishi F, Kinoshita K, Yamada T, Iijima H, Tsujii M, Hayashi N. Endoscopic submucosal dissection as a treatment for gastric noninvasive neoplasia: a multicenter study by Osaka University ESD Study Group. *J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 325-331
28 **Nakamura K**, Sakaguchi H, Enjoji M. Depressed adenoma of the stomach. *Cancer* 1988; **62**: 2197-2202
29 **Jung MK**, Jeon SW, Park SY, Cho CM, Tak WY, Kweon YO, Kim SK, Choi YH, Bae HI. Endoscopic characteristics of gastric adenomas suggesting carcinomatous transformation. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 2705-2711
30 **Ginsberg GG**, Al-Kawas FH, Fleischer DE, Reilly HF, Benjamin SB. Gastric polyps: relationship of size and histology to cancer risk. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1996; **91**: 714-717
31 **Daibo M**, Itabashi M, Hirota T. Malignant transformation of gastric hyperplastic polyps. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1987; **82**: 1016-1025
32 **Park DI**, Rhee PL, Kim JE, Hyun JG, Kim YH, Son HJ, Kim JJ, Paik SW, Rhee JC, Choi KW, Oh YL. Risk factors suggesting malignant transformation of gastric adenoma: univariate and multivariate analysis. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 501-506
33 **Yao K**, Iwashita A, Tanabe H, Nishimata N, Nagahama T, Maki S, Takaki Y, Hirai F, Hisabe T, Nishimura T, Matsui T. White opaque substance within superficial elevated gastric neoplasia as visualized by magnification endoscopy with narrow-band imaging: a new optical sign for differentiating between adenoma and carcinoma. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 574-580
34 **Li WB**, Zuo XL, Li CQ, Zuo F, Gu XM, Yu T, Chu CL, Zhang TG, Li YQ. Diagnostic value of confocal laser endomicros-

copy for gastric superficial cancerous lesions. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 299-306
35 **Lauwers GY**, Riddell RH. Gastric epithelial dysplasia. *Gut* 1999; **45**: 784-790
36 **Szalóki T**, Tóth V, Tiszlavicz L, Czakó L. Flat gastric polyps: results of forceps biopsy, endoscopic mucosal resection, and long-term follow-up. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41**: 1105-1109
37 **Fujiwara Y**, Arakawa T, Fukuda T, Kimura S, Uchida T, Obata A, Higuchi K, Wakasa K, Sakurai M, Kobayashi K. Diagnosis of borderline adenomas of the stomach by endoscopic mucosal resection. *Endoscopy* 1996; **28**: 425-430
38 **Muehldorfer SM**, Stolte M, Martus P, Hahn EG, Ell C. Diagnostic accuracy of forceps biopsy versus polypectomy for gastric polyps: a prospective multicentre study. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 465-470
39 **Szalóki T**, Tóth V, Németh I, Tiszlavicz L, Lonovics J, Czakó L. Endoscopic mucosal resection: not only therapeutic, but a diagnostic procedure for sessile gastric polyps. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: 551-555
40 **Akasaka T**, Nishida T, Tsutsui S, Michida T, Yamada T, Ogiyama H, Kitamura S, Ichiba M, Komori M, Nishiyama O, Nakanishi F, Zushi S, Nishihara A, Iijima H, Tsujii M, Hayashi N. Short-term outcomes of endoscopic submucosal dissection (ESD) for early gastric neoplasm: multicenter survey by osaka university ESD study group. *Dig Endosc* 2011; **23**: 73-77
41 **Gotoda T**, Yamamoto H, Soetikno RM. Endoscopic submucosal dissection of early gastric cancer. *J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41**: 929-942
42 **Takeuchi Y**, Uedo N, Iishi H, Yamamoto S, Yamamoto S, Yamada T, Higashino K, Ishihara R, Tatsuta M, Ishiguro S. Endoscopic submucosal dissection with insulated-tip knife for large mucosal early gastric cancer: a feasibility study (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **66**: 186-193
43 **Mannen K**, Tsunada S, Hara M, Yamaguchi K, Sakata Y, Fujise T, Noda T, Shimoda R, Sakata H, Ogata S, Iwakiri R, Fujimoto K. Risk factors for complications of endoscopic submucosal dissection in gastric tumors: analysis of 478 lesions. *J Gastroenterol* 2010; **45**: 30-36
44 **Isomoto H**, Shikuwa S, Yamaguchi N, Fukuda E, Ikeda K, Nishiyama H, Ohnita K, Mizuta Y, Shiozawa J, Kohno S. Endoscopic submucosal dissection for early gastric cancer: a large-scale feasibility study. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 331-336
45 **Itabashi M**, Hirota T, Unakami M, Ueno M, Oguro Y, Yamada T, Kitaoka H, Ichikawa H. The role of the biopsy in diagnosis of early gastric cancer. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 1984; **14**: 253-270
46 **Lansdown M**, Quirke P, Dixon MF, Axon AT, Johnston D. High grade dysplasia of the gastric mucosa: a marker for gastric carcinoma. *Gut* 1990; **31**: 977-983
47 **Yoon WJ**, Lee DH, Jung YJ, Jeong JB, Kim JW, Kim BG, Lee KL, Lee KH, Park YS, Hwang JH, Kim JW, Kim N, Lee JK, Jung HC, Yoon YB, Song IS. Histologic characteristics of gastric polyps in Korea: emphasis on discrepancy between endoscopic forceps biopsy and endoscopic mucosal resection specimen. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 4029-4032
48 **Lee CK**, Chung IK, Lee SH, Kim SP, Lee SH, Lee TH, Kim HS, Park SH, Kim SJ, Lee JH, Cho HD, Oh MH. Is endoscopic forceps biopsy enough for a definitive diagnosis of gastric epithelial neoplasia? *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **25**: 1507-1513
49 **Saraga EP**, Gardiol D, Costa J. Gastric dysplasia. A histological follow-up study. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1987; **11**: 788-796
50 **Rugge M**, Farinati F, Di Mario F, Baffa R, Valiante F, Cardin F. Gastric epithelial dysplasia: a prospective multicenter follow-up study from the Interdisciplinary Group on Gastric Epithelial Dysplasia. *Hum Pathol* 1991; **22**: 1002-1008
51 **Fertitta AM**, Comin U, Terruzzi V, Minoli G, Zambelli A, Cannatelli G, Bodini P, Bertoli G, Negri R, Brunati S. Clinical significance of gastric dysplasia: a multicenter follow-up study. Gastrointestinal Endoscopic Pathology Study Group. *Endoscopy* 1993; **25**: 265-268
52 **Farinati F**, Rugge M, Di Mario F, Valiante F, Baffa R. Early and advanced gastric cancer in the follow-up of moderate and severe gastric dysplasia patients. A prospective study. I.G.G.E.D.--Interdisciplinary Group on Gastric Epithelial Dysplasia. *Endoscopy* 1993; **25**: 261-264
53 **Di Gregorio C**, Morandi P, Fante R, De Gaetani C. Gastric dysplasia. A follow-up study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1993; **88**: 1714-1719
54 **Bearzi I**, Brancorsini D, Santinelli A, Rezai B, Mannello B, Ranaldi R. Gastric dysplasia: a ten-year follow-up study. *Pathol Res Pract* 1994; **190**: 61-68
55 **Rugge M**, Farinati F, Baffa R, Sonego F, Di Mario F, Leandro G, Valiante F. Gastric epithelial dysplasia in the natural history of gastric cancer: a multicenter prospective follow-up study. Interdisciplinary Group on Gastric Epithelial Dysplasia. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 1288-1296
56 **Kolodziejczyk P**, Yao T, Oya M, Nakamura S, Utsunomiya T, Ishikawa T, Tsuneyoshi M. Long-term follow-up study of patients with gastric adenomas with malignant transformation. An immunohistochemical and histochemical analysis. *Cancer* 1994; **74**: 2896-2907
57 **Kokkola A**, Haapiainen R, Laxén F, Puolakkainen P, Kivilaakso E, Virtamo J, Sipponen P. Risk of gastric carcinoma in patients with mucosal dysplasia associated with atrophic gastritis: a follow up study. *J Clin Pathol* 1996; **49**: 979-984
58 **Yamada H**, Ikegami M, Shimoda T, Takagi N, Maruyama M. Long-term follow-up study of gastric adenoma/dysplasia. *Endoscopy* 2004; **36**: 390-396
59 **Park SY**, Jeon SW, Jung MK, Cho CM, Tak WY, Kweon YO, Kim SK, Choi YH. Long-term follow-up study of gastric intraepithelial neoplasias: progression from low-grade dysplasia to invasive carcinoma. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **20**: 966-970
60 **Gotoda T**. Endoscopic resection of early gastric cancer. *Gastric Cancer* 2007; **10**: 1-11

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.100

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 100-102
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

OBSERVATION

Oral refeeding in mild acute pancreatitis: An old challenge

Júlio Maria F Chebli, Pedro D Gaburri, Liliana A Chebli

Júlio Maria F Chebli, Pedro D Gaburri, Liliana A Chebli, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, Universitary Hospital of the Federal University of Juiz de Fora, Minas Gerais 36036-247, Brazil

Author contributions: Chebli JMF, Gaburri PD and Chebli LA contributed equally to this paper.

Supported by A grant from CNPq, Brazil (to Julio Maria Fonseca Chebli); a clinical research fund from the CNPq and FAPEMIG, Brazil (in part)

Correspondence to: Julio Maria Fonseca Chebli, MD, PhD, Professor, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, Universitary Hospital of the Federal University of Juiz de Fora, Minas Gerais 36036-247, Brazil. chebli@globo.com
Telephone: +55-32-32324915 Fax: +55-32-32324915

Received: March 31, 2011 Revised: August 15, 2011
Accepted: August 22, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

Although the idea that pancreas rest has long been considered as a very relevant topic in acute pancreatitis (AP) therapy, the right time and type of diet to be offered to patients recovering from an acute attack are a great challenge to clinicians who treat this condition. Fortunately, the last decade was noted for several trials looking for the best answer to the question: "when and how to start oral refeeding in AP?" It is well known that 80% of patients present with mild disease characterized by usually uncomplicated clinical course are managed with pancreatic rest through nil per oral; while the use of specific nutritional intervention is an exception. Therefore, mild AP has been the most investigated form of AP and researchers have tried different kind of meals to offer calories and reduce costs by shortening hospitalization time. Usually in mild AP, the oral refeeding is introduced between the first 3 d and 7 d after hospitalization but, the type of diet and patients' tolerance have been scrutinized in detail with mixed results. Although 20% to 25% have pain recurrence requiring nutritional support and greater time of hospitalization, most patients seem to tolerate oral refeeding well. We propose analyzing the most recent investigations of this matter and their conclusions to develop a better understanding of the management of AP.

Key words: Acute pancreatitis; Oral refeeding; Nutrition; Treatment; Diet

Peer reviewer: Wai-Keung Chow, MD, Division of gastroenterology, China Medical University Hospital, No. 2 Yu-Der Rd., 400 Taichung, Taiwan, China

Chebli JMF, Gaburri PD, Chebli LA. Oral refeeding in mild acute pancreatitis: An old challenge. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 100-102 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/100.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.100

INTRODUCTION

Patients recovering from acute pancreatitis (AP) have been a great challenge for gastroenterologists with issues concerning the timing and type of diet to be offered without risk of increasing gland stimuli and worsening pancreas inflammation. The thought that as long as unfed they could be maintained through nil per oral was based on the idea that pancreas rest was considered an essential strategy in the treatment. This assumption has been taken up for years although there is, until now, little hard scientific basis to support it. It is conceivable that many patients with even more severe episodes of AP might eat quite early in the course of their disease, with no deleterious effects. In fact, nowadays there are no sufficient data to make clear this postulate. Moreover, this hypothesis was based only in physiological research. Until now no general consensus has been established about the type of diet and the appropriate time when it should be offered to patients convalescing from AP. An important aim in dealing with AP patients is to find a better way of managing oral food reintroduction. Since 80% of patients have mild AP, such patients have been more frequently investi-

gated. Pancreatic rest through nil per oral was always considered necessary in AP while the general rule suggested starting oral refeeding 3 d to 7 d after patients were hospitalized[1,2]. In general, oral intake of small amounts of calories have been usually considered the better strategy to start oral refeeding, once the clinical symptoms and signs of AP are absent, when the patients recover appetite and do not have nausea, vomiting or abdominal pain with normal bowel sounds[1,3]. Therefore, the traditional way to deal with this challenge during hospitalization was starting oral intake with clear liquids (CLD), since they do not exert relevant stimulatory effects on pancreatic exocrine secretion. A low-fat diet would be allowed to those who tolerate an initial trial[3]. Lipids can stimulate pancreatic secretion and clinicians have in mind that patients recovering from mild AP, eating a low-fat diet, have reduced exocrine pancreatic secretion as well as cholecystokinin (CCK) production. Therefore, potentially deleterious effects on the inflamed pancreas would occur, but there is little scientific evidence supporting this concept[4]. Although this approach is usually assumed, it is only based on clinical experience. New trials would be necessary to define amore appropriated diet to oral refeeding in patients recovering from AP.

REFEEDING IN AP

In 1997, Lévy *et al*[5], in a multivariate multicenter prospective study, tried to analyze the frequency and risk factors of recurrent pain during oral refeeding in 116 patients with mild AP. The conclusion was that pain relapse occurred in 20% of the patients and was more common in patients with necrotizing pancreatitis who had longer periods of pain. This survey seems to suggest that we would be able to predict high-risk patients who have pain recurrence during oral refeeding and could be considered a first step in pain relapse prevention. They also noticed that pain relapse frequency was not modified significantly in any of the therapeutic procedures adopted. However, in another evaluation, Chebli *et al*[6] studied 130 patients with mild AP and observed that during the oral refeeding period, 24.6% of patients had pain relapse, more frequently on days 1 (68.8%) and 2 (28%) and observed that it was related to higher serum levels of lipase on the day before refeeding, higher serum levels of C-reactive protein on the fourth day as well as peripancreatic fluid collections ($P < 0.01$). Pain relapse increased hospital stay and overall costs of disease treatment. Petrov *et al*[7] in a literature review, (cited in Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials, EMBASE, and MEDLINE) as well as the conclusions of abstracts of major gastroenterological meetings, taking into account that outcome measures studied were the incidence of pain relapse and length of hospitalization (LOH), pointed that only three studies met the inclusion criteria. They concluded that sixty (22%) of 274 patients had pain relapse during the course of AP and in 78.3% it occurred within 48 h after starting oral refeeding. All three studies found a difference in scores of severity in patients who had or had not pain relapse and found a significant increase in the LOH in those whose pain reappeared after oral refeeding. Therefore it becomes clear that, in these patients, there is an increased cost of treatment. Jacobson *et al*[8] developed a prospective randomized trial comparing CLD *vs* low-fat solid diet (LFSD) as the initial meal in mild AP. They randomized two similar groups with mild AP and hypothesized that initiating oral nutrition with LFSD after mild AP would be well-tolerated and would result in a shorter LOH. Their final conclusion was that starting oral nutrition after mild AP with a LFSD appeared to be safe and provided more calories than a CLD, but did not result in a shorter LOH. On the other hand, Reber[4] considered that earlier discharge was not an advantage and suggested a flaw in trial design, because he found it intuitively obvious that at least 1 d of hospitalization would have been saved in those who had begun with solid food. Moreover, Reber[4] posed two interesting questions: whether offering solid food to patients with AP can be done safely, does the nutrient composition (in particular, the fat content) of the diet affect the clinical response; and is it more relevant to feed such patients with a low rather than a higher fat content that might be more palatable? Meanwhile, Sathiaraj *et al*[9] compared two groups of mild AP patients who, as their initial meal had a soft diet or a clear liquid diet. They observed a statistically significant decrease in the LOH (total and post-refeeding) of a median 2 d in patients receiving a soft diet ($P < 0.001$) but no significant difference for refeeding interruption due to pain, was observed between the two groups, and patients who started on a soft diet consumed much more calories and fats on study day 1 ($P < 0.001$). The researchers conclusion was that oral refeeding with a soft diet in patients with mild AP can be considered safe and can result in shorter LOH. Studies of the best feeding option has come from comparisons between CLD and LFSD. Different kinds of diets have been tried but no one study was ambitious enough to investigate the tolerance of a full solid diet as the initial meal in AP. In 2010, Moraes *et al*[10] conducted an investigation to try to demonstrate whether or not a heavier diet could be dangerous given the evidence of previous studies. They observed through a prospective, randomized, controlled double blind clinical trial that oral refeeding, with a full solid diet in mild AP, was well tolerated by most patients and resulted in a shorter LOH among patients without abdominal pain relapse. Therefore, employing this strategy would save health care resources. It was observed that a full solid diet may be more palatable and a cost-saving alternative for the dietary management of patients recovering from mild AP. The authors also called attention to the fact that their findings may not be applied to patients with severe AP, since only those with mild AP were evaluated. As far as we are concerned, this is a highly relevant contribution to the optimal dietary approach to oral refeeding in mild AP but further clinical trials are necessary to investigate other strategies to prevent pain relapse during oral refeeding in patients with AP. It is well known that a 20% intolerance can be seen in AP, regardless of the type of

initial oral refeeding diet.

After analyzing the data in recent studies reviewed above, we can state that in patients with mild AP, the nutrient composition and the physical features of meals do not appear to change the clinical course of disease. Hence, a very interesting question arose: would we be able to match the interesting clinical data to those found in physiological studies[11,12] that show slower pancreatic response and higher pancreatic enzyme output in response to a high-fat solid diet with greater caloric loads? It is possible that the injured pancreas can have an attenuated response to feeding stimuli. So, we can speculate that the basal and stimulated pancreatic enzyme secretion, in particular pancreatic secretory response to CCK, may be woken markedly early, after the onset of AP, as have been shown in experimental studies[13,14]. Evidence allows us to conclude that in human pancreatitis the injured pancreas may be less responsive to stimulation by food than previously considered[15,16].

In the last two decades we noticed that several investigations tried to test the tolerance to food stimulation of the inflamed gland after an episode of mild AP. Initially on a longer fasting period followed by an early oral refeeding with clear liquid and a low fat diet. Moreover, the evidence that a full solid meal can be used in such circumstances with better tolerance, demonstrated that increased nutritious calories and a reduction in therapy costs can occur. However, the findings of Moraes *et al*[10] lead us to suppose that we have now found the answer to an old question. A full solid diet is well tolerated by the majority of patients and results in a shorter length of hospital stay without abdominal pain relapse, thereby saving health care resources. Petrov[17] pointed out in Moraes study that the rate of feeding intolerance was around 20%, regardless of the type of initial diet used for oral refeeding and this was unacceptable both from the perspective of patient's quality of life and the cost of treatment. However, this rate of intolerance was observed also in other trials[5,6] and it seems a rule in oral refeeding of patients with mild AP.

CONCLUSION

In summary, identifying patients who are at high risk of developing pain recurrence during oral refeeding due to more intense or persistent pancreatic inflammation on the day before refeeding (for example, those patients presenting with a substantially increased serum lipase concentration and high level of C-reactive protein)[6], might allow a timely implementation of more specific therapeutic measures for this subgroup of patients such as nasojejunal tube feeding. Thus further clinical investigations are necessary to improve the identification of these subgroup patients and to establish an adequate strategy to prevent their pain relapse. To the best of our knowledge it seems that when considering full solid diet refeeding, we do not need to be afraid of "wakening the sleeping tiger. " The in-hospital time can be, saving costs.

REFERENCES

1 **Banks PA**. Medical management of acute pancreatitis and complications. In: Go VLW, DiMagno EP, Gardner JD, Lebenthal E, Reber HA, Scheele GA, editors. The pancreas: biology, pathobiology, and disease. New York: Raven Press, 1993: 593-611

2 **Banks PA**, Freeman ML. Practice guidelines in acute pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 2379-2400

3 **Meier R**, Beglinger C, Layer P, Gullo L, Keim V, Laugier R, Friess H, Schweitzer M, Macfie J. ESPEN guidelines on nutrition in acute pancreatitis. European Society of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition. *Clin Nutr* 2002; **21**: 173-183

4 **Reber HA**. Food, fat, and the inflamed pancreas. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 915-916

5 **Lévy P**, Heresbach D, Pariente EA, Boruchowicz A, Delcenserie R, Millat B, Moreau J, Le Bodic L, de Calan L, Barthet M, Sauvanet A, Bernades P. Frequency and risk factors of recurrent pain during refeeding in patients with acute pancreatitis: a multivariate multicentre prospective study of 116 patients. *Gut* 1997; **40**: 262-266

6 **Chebli JM**, Gaburri PD, De Souza AF, Junior EV, Gaburri AK, Felga GE, De Paula EA, Forn CG, De Almeida GV, De Castro Nehme F. Oral refeeding in patients with mild acute pancreatitis: prevalence and risk factors of relapsing abdominal pain. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **20**: 1385-1389

7 **Petrov MS**, van Santvoort HC, Besselink MG, Cirkel GA, Brink MA, Gooszen HG. Oral refeeding after onset of acute pancreatitis: a review of literature. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2007; **102**: 2079-2084; quiz 2085

8 **Jacobson BC**, Vander Vliet MB, Hughes MD, Maurer R, McManus K, Banks PA. A prospective, randomized trial of clear liquids versus low-fat solid diet as the initial meal in mild acute pancreatitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **5**: 946-951; quiz 886

9 **Sathiaraj E**, Murthy S, Mansard MJ, Rao GV, Mahukar S, Reddy DN. Clinical trial: oral feeding with a soft diet compared with clear liquid diet as initial meal in mild acute pancreatitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 777-781

10 **Moraes JM**, Felga GE, Chebli LA, Franco MB, Gomes CA, Gaburri PD, Zanini A, Chebli JM. A full solid diet as the initial meal in mild acute pancreatitis is safe and result in a shorter length of hospitalization: results from a prospective, randomized, controlled, double-blind clinical trial. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 517-522

11 **Malagelada JR**, Go VL, Summerskill WH. Different gastric, pancreatic, and biliary responses to solid-liquid or homogenized meals. *Dig Dis Sci* 1979; **24**: 101-110

12 **Boivin M**, Lanspa SJ, Zinsmeister AR, Go VL, DiMagno EP. Are diets associated with different rates of human interdigestive and postprandial pancreatic enzyme secretion? *Gastroenterology* 1990; **99**: 1763-1771

13 **Evander A**, Hederström E, Hultberg B, Ihse I. Exocrine pancreatic secretion in acute experimental pancreatitis. *Digestion* 1982; **24**: 159-167

14 **Niederau C**, Niederau M, Lüthen R, Strohmeyer G, Ferrell LD, Grendell JH. Pancreatic exocrine secretion in acute experimental pancreatitis. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **99**: 1120-1127

15 **Boreham B**, Ammori BJ. A prospective evaluation of pancreatic exocrine function in patients with acute pancreatitis: correlation with extent of necrosis and pancreatic endocrine insufficiency. *Pancreatology* 2003; **3**: 303-308

16 **O'Keefe SJ**, Lee RB, Li J, Stevens S, Abou-Assi S, Zhou W. Trypsin secretion and turnover in patients with acute pancreatitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **289**: G181-G187

17 **Petrov MS**. Oral refeeding in acute pancreatitis: solid evidence on solid food? *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 525-526; author reply 526

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.103

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 103-108
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

GUIDELINES FOR BASIC SCIENCE

Role of Sonic Hedgehog signaling during progression from inflammation to cancer in the stomach

Alexander E Sherman, Yana Zavros

Alexander E Sherman, Yana Zavros, Department of Molecular and Cellular Physiology, College of Medicine, University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, OH 45267-0576, United States
Author contributions: Sherman AE drafted the manuscript; Sherman AE and Zavros Y critically revised the manuscript for important intellectual content; Zavros Y obtained funding and performed the study supervision.
Supported by American Cancer Society Research Scholar Award, No. 119072-RSG-10-167-01-MPC (to Zavros Y)
Correspondence to: Yana Zavros, PhD, Department of Molecular and Cellular Physiology, College of Medicine, University of Cincinnati, 231 Albert Sabin Way, MSB Room 1113, Cincinnati, OH 45267-0576, United States. yana.zavros@uc.edu
Telephone: +1-513-5582421 Fax: +1-513-5585736
Received: August 1, 2011 Revised: September 20, 2011
Accepted: October 14, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

Despite advances in treatment and the declining incidence, gastric cancer remains the second leading cause of cancer-related deaths in the world. Understanding the progression from inflammation to cancer in the stomach is crucial in the development of novel therapies and strategies for treating this disease. Chronic inflammation of the stomach is typically caused by *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) and resulting lesions may lead to gastric cancer. During the progression from inflammation to cancer, the stomach epithelium changes with evidence of the disruption of normal epithelial cell differentiation and infiltrating inflammatory cells. Coincident with the development of atrophic gastritis and metaplasia, is the loss of the gastric morphogen Sonic Hedgehog (Shh). Given its critical role as a regulator of gastric tissue homeostasis, the disruption of Shh expression during inflammation correlates with the loss of normal epithelial cell differentiation, but this has only recently been rigorously tested *in vivo* using a unique mouse model of targeted gastric Shh deletion. While pre-neoplastic lesions such as atrophic gastritis and intestinal metaplasia are associated with the loss of Shh within the acid-secreting glands of the stomach, there is a clear link between elevated Shh and signaling to gastric cancers. The current review focuses on the effects of aberrant Shh expression and its role in the development of gastric cancer, specifically in response to *H. pylori* infection.

Key words: *Helicobacter pylori*; Interleukin-1β; Acid secretion; Gastric tissue homeostasis

Peer reviewer: Hiroyuki Matsubayashi, MD, PhD, Chief of Pancreatobiliary Endoscopy, Department of Endoscopy, Shizuoka Cancer Center, 1007 Shimonagakubo, Nagaizumi, Suntogun, Shizuoka 411-8777, Japan

Sherman AE, Zavros Y. Role of Sonic Hedgehog signaling during progression from inflammation to cancer in the stomach. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 103-108 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/103.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.103

INTRODUCTION

Despite advances in treatment and declining incidence, stomach cancer remains the second leading cause of cancer-related deaths in the world[1]. Understanding the progression from inflammation to cancer in the stomach is crucial in the development of novel therapies and strategies for treating this disease. The Hedgehog family of proteins, comprised of Sonic Hedgehog (Shh), Indian Hedgehog (Ihh) and Desert Hedgehog (Dhh), has been implicated in a variety of solid tumors including stomach cancer[2-4]. This review will focus on the role of Shh in the progression from inflammation to tumorigenesis of gastric carcinomas and its role in stomach cancer.

Hedgehog was given its name from the "spiny" phe-

notype found in *Drosophila* embryos with a mutation in the gene[5]. Three mammalian homologs have since been discovered: Shh, Ihh and Dhh. Ihh and Dhh have mostly tissue-specific expression while Shh has widespread expression of which deficiency leads to neural, limb growth and foregut defects[6]. Hedgehog is generated as a preprotein before its signal sequence is cleaved, yielding an approximately 45 kDa precursor. The precursor is internally cleaved and a cholesterol moiety is attached to a glycine residue on the nascent carboxy-terminus[7]. This covalent attachment of cholesterol is a unique modification among secreted ligands and is a requirement for tissue specificity and localization of the molecule. In vertebrates, Shh binds and inhibits Patched-1 (Ptc), consequently activating Smoothened (Smo), which transduces the Hedgehog signal into the cytoplasm, activating the Gli family of transcription factors[8,9]. Despite this information, the events leading to Gli activation, especially in the mammalian stomach, are poorly understood.

Shh is a peptide morphogen produced in gastric epithelium; however, expression in specific cell types has been controversial. Recently, a study utilizing a Shh-LacZ reporter mouse line identified all major cell lineages of the corpus expressing Shh; these included surface pit, mucous neck, zymogenic and parietal cells[10]. Some stromal cells express signal transduction components in addition to Shh; these include the 12-transmembrane receptor, Ptc, Smo, 7-transmembrane receptor and Gli transcription factor family. The Hedgehog ligand activates Smo which leads to transcriptional activation of Gli1, Gli2 becoming an activator and Gli3 no longer acting as a repressor[11]. Therefore, Hedgehog signaling results in an increase of activator Gli and a decrease in repressor Gli. These events are crucial in the development and maintenance of multiple organs and the role of Shh as a key morphogen has been well documented[5,12].

Shh has important roles in the development of multiple organ systems including neuronal and gastrointestinal systems[13,14]. Shh in the mammalian stomach has been found to be hormonally regulated by gastrin and requires an acidic environment for proper processing[15]. The acid-activated pepsin A protease was found to mediate the processing of the 45kDa precursor molecule to the active Shh molecule. These findings indicate the importance of the acidic gastric environment for maintenance of Shh in the stomach.

Much of what we know about Shh's role in mammals has come from studies in animal models. Shh-knockout mice display key features that support the importance of proper Shh homeostasis for normal development and physiological function.

Shh -/- mouse embryos displayed multiple gut abnormalities including overt gut malrotation and intestinal transformation of the stomach[16]. Additionally, neurons of the enteric nervous system underwent abnormal differentiation compared to wildtype. While this system provided evidence for the role of Hedgehog in the coordination of developmental genes, these mice die at or shortly after birth.

In order to study the effects of Shh signaling in the stomach, Xiao *et al*[17] developed a mouse model expressing a parietal cell-specific deletion of Shh (HKCre/Shh^{KO}). This study found evidence of hypochlorhydria, hypergastrinemia and foveolar hyperplasia by 8 mo of age. Additionally, a delay in the differentiation of zymogen cells, demonstrated by an increase in immature cells expressing markers for both mucous neck and zymogen cells, was documented in the stomach of HKCre/Shh^{KO} mice[17]. The deletion of Shh from parietal cells led to alterations in stomach morphology and gastric cell differentiation; however, there was no evidence of parietal cell atrophy, a key step in the development of stomach cancer in *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection[18,19]. The absence of parietal cell atrophy suggests that the loss of Shh expression alone is not sufficient to trigger the development of stomach cancer.

H. PYLORI INFECTION AND SONIC HEDGEHOG

H. pylori infection is globally widespread and a major cause of chronic atrophic gastritis with persistent infection in 50% of the global population[20,21]. While infection with *H. pylori* has been directly linked to the development of gastric cancer, the mechanism of tumorigenesis is still unclear. There are many factors that have been considered in *Helicobacter*-mediated carcinogenesis; however, the focus of this review will be to discuss its contribution by modulating Shh expression. *H. pylori* infection primarily contributes to gastric cancer development through two mechanisms: loss of Shh by destruction of parietal cells and induction of a chronic inflammatory gastric environment.

H. pylori and the inflammatory response

The ability of *H. pylori* to evade the primarily Th1-mediated host immune response contributes to the development of chronically elevated interleukin-1β (IL-1β) and other inflammatory cytokines in the stomach[10,22]. A study of *H. pylori* associated with chronic atrophic gastritis found upregulation of a gene encoding cysteine-rich protein A, which induces Th1 cytokines interferon (IFN)-γ and IL-12[23]. Additionally, *H. pylori*-associated atrophic gastritis has been found to be more frequent in patients with pro-inflammatory polymorphisms of genes for IL-1β and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α[24,25]. Specifically, it has been shown that elevated IL-1β leads to the suppression of Shh, which is necessary for the growth and differentiation of the gastric mucosa during cell restitution during *H. pylori* infection[10,26].

Loss of Shh during chronic inflammation

The loss of parietal cells through *Helicobacter* infection and subsequent autoimmunity has been well documented[22,27]. Molecular mimicry between the H^+,K^+-ATPase local-

ized to parietal cells canaliculi and *H. pylori* leads to the selective destruction of parietal cells during the immune response to infection. There is evidence that Shh is expressed and secreted from parietal cells and that the loss of parietal cells results in lower expression of Shh[15,28,29]. Additionally, the higher luminal pH in the stomach during *Helicobacter* infection may interfere with Shh signaling as it has been shown that gastric Shh processing is pH-dependent[15]. The loss of Shh, coupled with an increase in the proliferation and differentiation of gastric stem cells, contributes to improper regeneration of gastric epithelium. Shh acts *via* an autocrine loop in the stomach and is implicated in stem cell restitution of damaged gastric mucosa during *H. pylori* chronic infection[30]. Despite its crucial role in gastric homeostasis, the loss of Shh alone is not sufficient for neoplastic transformation[17]. An additional study examining the role of Shh in the presence of *Helicobacter* demonstrated the importance of the chronic inflammatory environment induced by infection for the induction of gastric atrophy associated with Shh suppression[10].

H. pylori infection in Mongolian gerbils has been found to induce inflammation and a loss of Shh expression[31-33]. Infection resulted in a smaller region of Shh-expressing cells in the stomach and hyperproliferation of Shh-negative cells after 51 wk. In humans, the loss of Shh expression coincided with the induction of caudal type homeobox 2 (Cdx2), intestine-specific transcription factors in the stomach[34]. In fact, Cdx2-transgenic mice developed gastric polyps with invasive gastric adenocarcinoma, implicating intestinal metaplasia in gastric carcinogenesis[35]. Further studies of this mouse model demonstrated Cdx2 transcriptionally down-regulating Shh through its promoter, inducing metaplasia through the expression of intestinal metaplastic mucosa and loss of gastric phenotype[35]. Cyclopamine, an inhibitor of Shh signaling, has been shown *in vivo* to reduce the expression of parietal cell-specific H^+,K^+-ATPase[36]. The lack of an appropriate level of Shh signaling leads to improper gastric morphogenesis during healing and ultimately gastric mucosal atrophy, predisposing the individual to gastric cancer[30].

ROLE OF SONIC HEDGEHOG IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF GASTRIC CANCER

With an estimated annual 989 600 new cases and 738 000 deaths, stomach cancer is the second leading cause of cancer-related deaths worldwide[1]. The importance of Shh in the development and maintenance of proper gastric function is established; however, there are alternative explanations for its role in carcinogenesis.

Increased Shh from stomach cell selection

The aforementioned studies hypothesize that lower Shh expression in *H. pylori* infection leads to impaired differentiation and morphogenesis during healing secondary to inflammatory signals. Other studies suggest *H. pylori* infection selects for cells that are resistant to cell death and that these cells produce higher levels of Shh[37,38]. The anti-apoptotic properties of these cells may contribute to the tumorigenesis in these human gastric carcinoma cells[38]. It is important to consider that an *in vitro* study may not be the most appropriate representation of the development of human disease due to the lack of environmental factors, including inflammatory cytokines, signaling and morphogenic factors from parietal cells, and the contribution of progenitor cells.

Contribution of CD44+ cells as cancer stem-like cells

Previous data suggests the involvement of CD44+ cells in the repair of gastric mucosa in *H. pylori* infection[39]. In fact, this study found that both IFN-γ and TNF-α increased CD44 expression; however, elevated levels of IL-1β and IFN-γ may cause transformation of some of these recruited stem cells into cancer stem cells (CSCs). CD44 has been identified as a marker of CSCs, thus supporting the idea that gastric CSCs exist and possess tumorigenic properties both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. In fact, Takaishi *et al*[40,41] found that CD44 expression correlated with dysplastic gastric glands and invasive gastric lesions in *Helicobacter*-infected mice. In a mouse model of activated gastric Wnt and prostaglandin E2 signaling, CD44 was upregulated in gastric tumors[42]. Wnt signaling is a downstream effector of Hedgehog signaling; therefore, this finding provides additional evidence that CD44 may play a role in gastric tumorigenesis, possibly through Shh signaling[43,44]. In another study, CD44+ cells isolated from these tumors had high expression of CD133, another marker used in identifying CSCs, and low expression of MUCA5C, a marker of gastric epithelial differentiation[42,45]. Furthermore, Shh has been found to be upregulated in CD44+ cells and inhibition of Shh signaling by cyclopamine blocks the chemoresistant and self-renewing properties of these proposed CSCs[46]. In humans, CD44+ tumors are also associated poorer survival in patients with intestinal-type gastric adenocarcinoma[47].

Reappearance of Shh during cancer development - role of bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells

The seemingly paradoxical disappearance and reappearance of Shh expression during gastric carcinogenesis requires further elucidation. The loss of parietal cells during *H. pylori* infection may explain the initial deficit of Shh expression, while the repopulation of the gastric mucosa by stem cells expressing Shh may explain the high levels of expression found in gastric adenocarcinomas. Of particular interest are bone-marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) and their potential role in tumorigenesis. These cells are recruited to sites of tissue injury and have been hypothesized to be the link between chronic inflammation and stomach cancer[48,49]. Houghton *et al*[48,49] transplanted marrow-derived cells tracked by X-galactosidase in a lethally irradiated mouse model of chronic *Helicobacter* infection. They found that the mice developed metaplasia and dysplasia, and that the marrow-derived cells were pro-

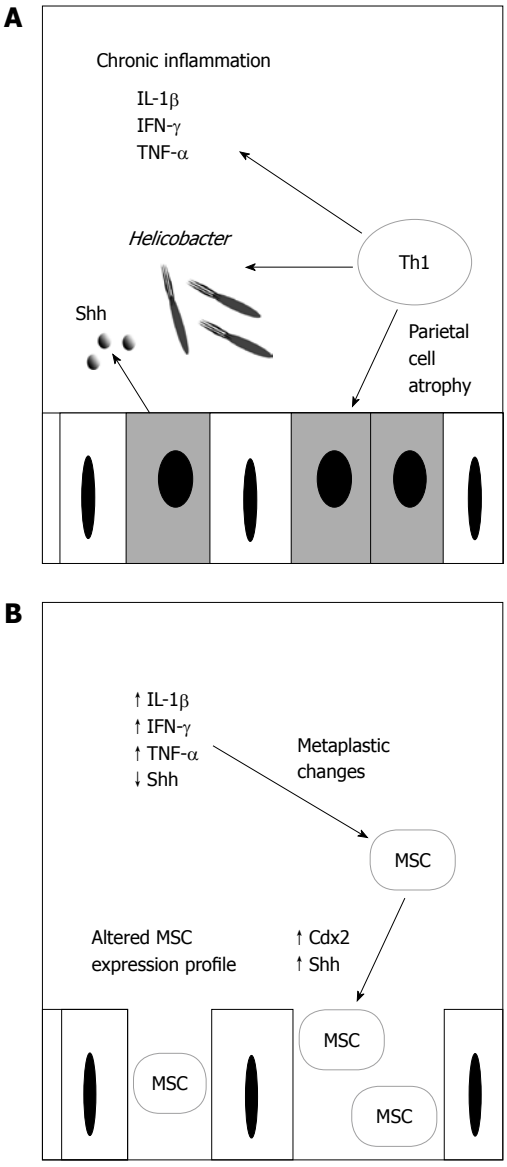


Figure 1 Neoplastic transformation of the stomach triggered by chronic inflammation. A: *Helicobacter* infection induces chronic inflammation mediated by Th1 cells leading to loss of Shh-secreting parietal cells; B: Inflammatory cytokines present in stomach influence expression of recruited MSCs, altering their expression profile leading to metaplastic changes, the preliminary step in gastric carcinogenesis. IL-1β: Interleukin-1beta; IFN: Interferon; TNF: Tumor necrosis factor; Shh: Sonic hedgehog; Cdx2: Caudal type homeobox 2; MSCs: Mesenchymal stem cells.

liferating in the dysplastic glands of the stomach. Furthermore, this MSC engraftment could only be demonstrated with concurrent *Helicobacter* infection, supporting the idea that chronic inflammation is necessary for the development of parietal cell atrophy and subsequent neoplastic transformation. Furthermore, it has been shown that inhibition of Hedgehog signaling by cyclopamine decreases MSC cell proliferation and clonogenecity, suggesting a role of Hedgehog in the maintenance of this cell population in the periphery[50]. Emerging data provides further evidence for the role of MSCs in gastric carcinogenesis. MSCs have been isolated and characterized from patients undergoing radical gastrectomy for stomach cancer[51,52]. These cells expressed CD44, had a larger population in S phase compared to control, but lacked tumorigenic properties when transplanted into BALB/c nude mice. Further studies are warranted on the impact of aberrant Shh expression on the differentiation of recruited MSCs and their role in gastric tumorigenesis.

Persistent *H. pylori* infection remains one of the key events leading to gastric adenocarcinoma. The loss of parietal cells and secretion of inflammatory cytokines, including IL-1β and IFN-γ secreted by Th1 cells induced by persistent *Helicobacter* infection, causes suppression of Shh signaling (Figure 1A). When recruited MSCs repopulate the gastric epithelium, the presence of inflammatory cytokines in combination with the absence of adequate Shh expression allows for metaplastic changes, including increased expression of Cdx2, ultimately leading to dysplasia and subsequent cancer development (Figure 1B). The malignant transformation of MSCs into cancer-promoting cells may be induced by inflammatory cytokines secreted during chronic gastritis. Malignantly transformed MSCs may be the site of Shh secretion associated with gastric carcinomas. However, the *in vivo* malignant transformation of MSCs in response to chronic inflammation is not yet known.

CONCLUSION

Chronic inflammation is typically caused by *H. pylori* and is the most consistent lesion leading to gastric cancer. During the progression from inflammation to cancer, the stomach epithelium changes with evidence of the disruption of normal epithelial cell differentiation, infiltrating inflammatory cells and the recruitment of bone marrow derived MSCs. Coincident with changes in cell differentiation associated with the development of atrophic gastritis and metaplasia, is the loss of Shh. Given its predicted critical role as a regulator of gastric tissue homeostasis, the disruption of Shh expression during inflammation would be expected to result in loss of normal epithelial cell differentiation, but this has only recently been rigorously tested *in vivo* using the HKCre/Shh^{KO} mouse model. Studies using HKCre/Shh^{KO} mice reveal for the first time a direct role of Shh as a regulator of epithelial cell function and differentiation in the normal adult stomach. The dysregulation may be seen as a global increase or decrease in expression, or in altered location of expression. For example, atrophic gastritis and intestinal metaplasia are associated with the loss of Shh within the fundic mucosa[18,19], while elevated Shh and signaling is associated with gastric cancers[37,46,53]. Although the association between Shh and gastric cancer is clear, the mechanism that regulates the production of Shh protein within the tumor microenvironment and the precise role of Shh in tumor progression are still largely unknown. Understanding the role of Shh in the neoplastic transformations associated with chronic gastric inflammation would allow for the development of targeted therapeutics and preventative strategies.

REFERENCES

1 **Jemal A**, Bray F, Center MM, Ferlay J, Ward E, Forman D. Global cancer statistics. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2011; **61**: 69-90
2 **Takezaki T**, Hide T, Takanaga H, Nakamura H, Kuratsu J, Kondo T. Essential role of the Hedgehog signaling pathway in human glioma-initiating cells. *Cancer Sci* 2011; **102**: 1306-1312
3 **Wang X**, Venugopal C, Manoranjan B, McFarlane N, O'Farrell E, Nolte S, Gunnarsson T, Hollenberg R, Kwiecien J, Northcott P, Taylor MD, Hawkins C, Singh SK. Sonic hedgehog regulates Bmi1 in human medulloblastoma brain tumor-initiating cells. *Oncogene* 2011; Epub ahead of print
4 **Ohta M**, Tateishi K, Kanai F, Watabe H, Kondo S, Guleng B, Tanaka Y, Asaoka Y, Jazag A, Imamura J, Ijichi H, Ikenoue T, Sata M, Miyagishi M, Taira K, Tada M, Kawabe T, Omata M. p53-Independent negative regulation of p21/cyclin-dependent kinase-interacting protein 1 by the sonic hedgehog-glioma-associated oncogene 1 pathway in gastric carcinoma cells. *Cancer Res* 2005; **65**: 10822-10829
5 **Nüsslein-Volhard C**, Wieschaus E. Mutations affecting segment number and polarity in Drosophila. *Nature* 1980; **287**: 795-801
6 **Chiang C**, Litingtung Y, Lee E, Young KE, Corden JL, Westphal H, Beachy PA. Cyclopia and defective axial patterning in mice lacking Sonic hedgehog gene function. *Nature* 1996; **383**: 407-413
7 **Porter JA**, Ekker SC, Park WJ, von Kessler DP, Young KE, Chen CH, Ma Y, Woods AS, Cotter RJ, Koonin EV, Beachy PA. Hedgehog patterning activity: role of a lipophilic modification mediated by the carboxy-terminal autoprocessing domain. *Cell* 1996; **86**: 21-34
8 **Taipale J**, Cooper MK, Maiti T, Beachy PA. Patched acts catalytically to suppress the activity of Smoothened. *Nature* 2002; **418**: 892-897
9 **Goodrich LV**, Johnson RL, Milenkovic L, McMahon JA, Scott MP. Conservation of the hedgehog/patched signaling pathway from flies to mice: induction of a mouse patched gene by Hedgehog. *Genes Dev* 1996; **10**: 301-312
10 **Waghray M**, Zavros Y, Saqui-Salces M, El-Zaatari M, Alamelumangapuram CB, Todisco A, Eaton KA, Merchant JL. Interleukin-1beta promotes gastric atrophy through suppression of Sonic Hedgehog. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 562-572, 572.e1-572.e2
11 **Ruiz i Altaba A**, Sánchez P, Dahmane N. Gli and hedgehog in cancer: tumours, embryos and stem cells. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2002; **2**: 361-372
12 **Ingham PW**, McMahon AP. Hedgehog signaling in animal development: paradigms and principles. *Genes Dev* 2001; **15**: 3059-3087
13 **Kim TH**, Kim BM, Mao J, Rowan S, Shivdasani RA. Endodermal Hedgehog signals modulate Notch pathway activity in the developing digestive tract mesenchyme. *Development* 2011; **138**: 3225-3233
14 **Cayuso J**, Ulloa F, Cox B, Briscoe J, Martí E. The Sonic hedgehog pathway independently controls the patterning, proliferation and survival of neuroepithelial cells by regulating Gli activity. *Development* 2006; **133**: 517-528
15 **Zavros Y**, Waghray M, Tessier A, Bai L, Todisco A, L Gumucio D, Samuelson LC, Dlugosz A, Merchant JL. Reduced pepsin A processing of sonic hedgehog in parietal cells precedes gastric atrophy and transformation. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 33265-33274
16 **Ramalho-Santos M**, Melton DA, McMahon AP. Hedgehog signals regulate multiple aspects of gastrointestinal development. *Development* 2000; **127**: 2763-2772
17 **Xiao C**, Ogle SA, Schumacher MA, Orr-Asman MA, Miller ML, Lertkowit N, Varro A, Hollande F, Zavros Y. Loss of parietal cell expression of Sonic hedgehog induces hypergastrinemia and hyperproliferation of surface mucous cells. *Gastroenterology* 2010; **138**: 550-561, 561.e1-561.e8
18 **Shiotani A**, Iishi H, Uedo N, Ishiguro S, Tatsuta M, Nakae Y, Kumamoto M, Merchant JL. Evidence that loss of sonic hedgehog is an indicator of Helicobater pylori-induced atrophic gastritis progressing to gastric cancer. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 581-587
19 **Shiotani A**, Iishi H, Uedo N, Kumamoto M, Nakae Y, Ishiguro S, Tatsuta M, Graham DY. Histologic and serum risk markers for noncardia early gastric cancer. *Int J Cancer* 2005; **115**: 463-469
20 **Fuccio L**, Eusebi LH, Bazzoli F. Gastric cancer, Helicobacter pylori infection and other risk factors. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2010; **2**: 342-347
21 **Suerbaum S**, Michetti P. Helicobacter pylori infection. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 1175-1186
22 **D'Elios MM**, Bergman MP, Azzurri A, Amedei A, Benagiano M, De Pont JJ, Cianchi F, Vandenbroucke-Grauls CM, Romagnani S, Appelmelk BJ, Del Prete G. H(+),K(+)-atpase (proton pump) is the target autoantigen of Th1-type cytotoxic T cells in autoimmune gastritis. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: 377-386
23 **Giannakis M**, Chen SL, Karam SM, Engstrand L, Gordon JI. Helicobacter pylori evolution during progression from chronic atrophic gastritis to gastric cancer and its impact on gastric stem cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 4358-4363
24 **El-Omar EM**, Carrington M, Chow WH, McColl KE, Bream JH, Young HA, Herrera J, Lissowska J, Yuan CC, Rothman N, Lanyon G, Martin M, Fraumeni JF, Rabkin CS. Interleukin-1 polymorphisms associated with increased risk of gastric cancer. *Nature* 2000; **404**: 398-402
25 **Schneider BG**, Camargo MC, Ryckman KK, Sicinschi LA, Piazuelo MB, Zabaleta J, Correa P, Williams SM. Cytokine polymorphisms and gastric cancer risk: an evolving view. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2008; **7**: 157-162
26 **Katoh Y**, Katoh M. Identification and characterization of rat Desert hedgehog and Indian hedgehog genes in silico. *Int J Oncol* 2005; **26**: 545-549
27 **D'Elios MM**, Appelmelk BJ, Amedei A, Bergman MP, Del Prete G. Gastric autoimmunity: the role of Helicobacter pylori and molecular mimicry. *Trends Mol Med* 2004; **10**: 316-323
28 **Zavros Y**, Orr MA, Xiao C, Malinowska DH. Sonic hedgehog is associated with H+-K+-ATPase-containing membranes in gastric parietal cells and secreted with histamine stimulation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2008; **295**: G99-G111
29 **Stepan V**, Ramamoorthy S, Nitsche H, Zavros Y, Merchant JL, Todisco A. Regulation and function of the sonic hedgehog signal transduction pathway in isolated gastric parietal cells. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 15700-15708
30 **Faller G**, Kirchner T. Immunological and morphogenic basis of gastric mucosa atrophy and metaplasia. *Virchows Arch* 2005; **446**: 1-9
31 **Nishizawa T**, Suzuki H, Masaoka T, Minegishi Y, Iwasahi E, Hibi T. Helicobacter pylori eradication restored sonic hedgehog expression in the stomach. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2007; **54**: 697-700
32 **Nishizawa T**, Suzuki H, Nakagawa I, Minegishi Y, Masaoka T, Iwasaki E, Hibi T. Early Helicobacter pylori eradication restores sonic hedgehog expression in the gastric mucosa of Mongolian gerbils. *Digestion* 2009; **79**: 99-108
33 **Suzuki H**, Minegishi Y, Nomoto Y, Ota T, Masaoka T, van den Brink GR, Hibi T. Down-regulation of a morphogen (sonic hedgehog) gradient in the gastric epithelium of Helicobacter pylori-infected Mongolian gerbils. *J Pathol* 2005; **206**: 186-197
34 **Shiotani A**, Uedo N, Iishi H, Tatsuta M, Ishiguro S, Nakae Y, Kamada T, Haruma K, Merchant JL. Re-expression of sonic hedgehog and reduction of CDX2 after Helicobacter pylori eradication prior to incomplete intestinal metaplasia. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **121**: 1182-1189

35 **Mutoh H**, Hayakawa H, Sashikawa M, Sakamoto H, Sugano K. Direct repression of Sonic Hedgehog expression in the stomach by Cdx2 leads to intestinal transformation. *Biochem J* 2010; **427**: 423-434

36 **Kang DH**, Han ME, Song MH, Lee YS, Kim EH, Kim HJ, Kim GH, Kim DH, Yoon S, Baek SY, Kim BS, Kim JB, Oh SO. The role of hedgehog signaling during gastric regeneration. *J Gastroenterol* 2009; **44**: 372-379

37 **Kim JH**, Choi YJ, Lee SH, Shin HS, Lee IO, Kim YJ, Kim H, Yang WI, Kim H, Lee YC. Effect of Helicobacter pylori infection on the sonic hedgehog signaling pathway in gastric cancer cells. *Oncol Rep* 2010; **23**: 1523-1528

38 **Lee KM**, Lee JS, Jung HS, Park DK, Park HS, Hahm KB. Late reactivation of sonic hedgehog by Helicobacter pylori results in population of gastric epithelial cells that are resistant to apoptosis: implication for gastric carcinogenesis. *Cancer Lett* 2010; **287**: 44-53

39 **Fan X**, Long A, Goggins M, Fan X, Keeling PW, Kelleher D. Expression of CD44 and its variants on gastric epithelial cells of patients with Helicobacter pylori colonisation. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 507-512

40 **Takaishi S**, Okumura T, Tu S, Wang SS, Shibata W, Vigneshwaran R, Gordon SA, Shimada Y, Wang TC. Identification of gastric cancer stem cells using the cell surface marker CD44. *Stem Cells* 2009; **27**: 1006-1020

41 **Takaishi S**, Okumura T, Wang TC. Gastric cancer stem cells. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 2876-2882

42 **Ishimoto T**, Nagano O, Yae T, Tamada M, Motohara T, Oshima H, Oshima M, Ikeda T, Asaba R, Yagi H, Masuko T, Shimizu T, Ishikawa T, Kai K, Takahashi E, Imamura Y, Baba Y, Ohmura M, Suematsu M, Baba H, Saya H. CD44 variant regulates redox status in cancer cells by stabilizing the xCT subunit of system xc(-) and thereby promotes tumor growth. *Cancer Cell* 2011; **19**: 387-400

43 **Li H**, Fan X, Kovi RC, Jo Y, Moquin B, Konz R, Stoicov C, Kurt-Jones E, Grossman SR, Lyle S, Rogers AB, Montrose M, Houghton J. Spontaneous expression of embryonic factors and p53 point mutations in aged mesenchymal stem cells: a model of age-related tumorigenesis in mice. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 10889-10898

44 **Li HC**, Stoicov C, Rogers AB, Houghton J. Stem cells and cancer: evidence for bone marrow stem cells in epithelial cancers. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 363-371

45 **Schmuck R**, Warneke V, Behrens HM, Simon E, Weichert W, Röcken C. Genotypic and phenotypic characterization of side population of gastric cancer cell lines. *Am J Pathol* 2011; **178**: 1792-1804

46 **Song Z**, Yue W, Wei B, Wang N, Li T, Guan L, Shi S, Zeng Q, Pei X, Chen L. Sonic hedgehog pathway is essential for maintenance of cancer stem-like cells in human gastric cancer. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e17687

47 **Ghaffarzadehgan K**, Jafarzadeh M, Raziee HR, Sima HR, Esmaili-Shandiz E, Hosseinnezhad H, Taghizadeh-Kermani A, Moaven O, Bahrani M. Expression of cell adhesion molecule CD44 in gastric adenocarcinoma and its prognostic importance. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 6376-6381

48 **Houghton J**, Li H, Fan X, Liu Y, Liu JH, Rao VP, Poutahidis T, Taylor CL, Jackson EA, Hewes C, Lyle S, Cerny A, Bowen G, Cerny J, Moore N, Kurt-Jones EA, Erdman SE. Mutations in bone marrow-derived stromal stem cells unmask latent malignancy. *Stem Cells Dev* 2010; **19**: 1153-1166

49 **Houghton J**, Stoicov C, Nomura S, Rogers AB, Carlson J, Li H, Cai X, Fox JG, Goldenring JR, Wang TC. Gastric cancer originating from bone marrow-derived cells. *Science* 2004; **306**: 1568-1571

50 **Plaisant M**, Fontaine C, Cousin W, Rochet N, Dani C, Peraldi P. Activation of hedgehog signaling inhibits osteoblast differentiation of human mesenchymal stem cells. *Stem Cells* 2009; **27**: 703-713

51 **Cao H**, Xu W, Qian H, Zhu W, Yan Y, Zhou H, Zhang X, Xu X, Li J, Chen Z, Xu X. Mesenchymal stem cell-like cells derived from human gastric cancer tissues. *Cancer Lett* 2009; **274**: 61-71

52 **Xu X**, Zhang X, Wang S, Qian H, Zhu W, Cao H, Wang M, Chen Y, Xu W. Isolation and comparison of mesenchymal stem-like cells from human gastric cancer and adjacent noncancerous tissues. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2011; **137**: 495-504

53 **Berman DM**, Karhadkar SS, Maitra A, Montes De Oca R, Gerstenblith MR, Briggs K, Parker AR, Shimada Y, Eshleman JR, Watkins DN, Beachy PA. Widespread requirement for Hedgehog ligand stimulation in growth of digestive tract tumours. *Nature* 2003; **425**: 846-851

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.109

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 109-113
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

GUIDELINES FOR BASIC SCIENCE

Gastric mammalian target of rapamycin signaling, hormone production and energy metabolism

Ge-Yang Xu, Yin Li, Wei-Zhen Zhang

Ge-Yang Xu, Yin Li, Department of Physiology and Pathophysiology, Peking University Health Science Center, Beijing 100191, China
Wei-Zhen Zhang, Department of Physiology and Pathophysiology, Peking University Health Science Center, Beijing 100191, China
Wei-Zhen Zhang, Department of Surgery, University of Michigan Medical Center, Ann Arbor, MI 48109-0346, United States
Author contributions: Xu GY drafted the manuscript; Li Y helped to edit the paper; Zhang WZ proposed, edited and revised the manuscript.
Supported by Grants from the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30971434, 30871194, 30971085 and 81030012; Program for New Century Excellent Talents in University, Beijing Natural Science Foundation, No. 7112080
Correspondence to: Wei-Zhen Zhang, Professor, Department of Physiology and Pathophysiology, Peking University Health Science Center, Beijing 100191,
China. weizhenzhang@bjmu.edu.cn
Telephone: +86-10-82802183 Fax: +86-10-82802183
Received: May 28, 2011 Revised: October 7, 2011
Accepted: October 14, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

The obesity epidemic imposes a significant health burden on human beings. Current understanding of the mechanisms underlying the development of obesity is incomplete and contemporary treatment is often ineffective. Gastrointestinal hormones are important regulators of food intake and energy metabolism. Previous studies indicate that the mammalian target of rapamycin signaling pathway in the gastric mucosa is crucially involved in fuel sensing in the gastrointestinal tract and plays a critical role in the coordination of nutrient availability and ingestive behavior *via* the production of gastric hormones. As an important component of the brain-gut axis regulating food intake and energy homeostasis, energy sensing in the gastrointestinal tract may provide a novel insight into our understanding of the precise coordination between the organism and cellular energy state.

Key words: Gastric mammalian target of rapamycin; Hormones; Energy metabolism

Peer reviewers: Gregory M Holmes, Dr., Department of Neural and Behavioral Sciences, College of Medicine, Penn State University, Hershey, PA 17033-0850, United States; Cinzia Domeneghini, Professor, Department of Veterinary Science and Technology for Food Safety, University of Milan, via Celoria 10, Milan I-20133, Italy

Xu GY, Li Y, Zhang WZ. Gastric mammalian target of rapamycin signaling, hormone production and energy metabolism. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 109-113 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/109.htm
DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.109

INTRODUCTION

Food intake and energy metabolism are regulated by the reciprocal actions of a group of anorexigenic peptides, which include leptin, insulin, cholecystokinin, peptide YY and glucagon-like peptide, and by the actions of a group of orexigenic peptides, including ghrelin. The majority of these hormones are secreted by endocrine cells scattered throughout the gastrointestinal tract[1]. All these hormones are proposed to modulate the activity of the energy metabolism center within the hypothalamus, ultimately leading to a change in feeding behavior and the control of metabolic homeostasis[2]. While many studies reveal that nutrient sensing molecules within the hypothalamic neurons are critical in the control of energy homeostasis[3] and defects in fuel sensing at the hypothalamic cellular level may lead to energy imbalance at the organism level and to the development of obesity[4], a recent study suggests that there also exists a fuel sensing mechanism in the gastric mucosa[5]. This finding suggests that the

interaction between peripheral and central fuel sensing mechanisms is a crucial feature of feeding behavior and energy homeostasis[5]. The peripheral fuel sensing mechanism in the gastric mucosa may function to regulate the production of gastric hormones and therefore contribute to the modulation of energy metabolism.

FUEL SENSING MECHANISM

Obesity is defined as the condition in which energy intake consistently outpaces energy expenditure leading to the accumulation of excess fat to an extent that health is negatively affected. The development of obesity is linked to small but cumulative discrepancies between caloric intake and energy expenditure[6]. Under normal conditions, balance in energy metabolism is maintained by a precise regulation of cellular activity in multiple organs that matches nutrient supply at the organism level[7]. The link between the energy status of individual cells and the overall energy balance of the entire organism is complex and remains largely unknown. Many studies have identified the hypothalamus as a critical organ for integrating intracellular metabolic processes with energy homeostasis at the organism level[7], adjusting food intake to match the level of overall cellular activity. Recent investigations have identified 5' AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK)[8] and mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR)[9] as key fuel sensors in hypothalamic neurons. AMPK is a serine-threonine protein kinase which serves as a cellular fuel sensor to protect cell viability in response to ATP depletion[10]. AMPK is tightly regulated, monitoring changes in the cellular ratio of adenosine monophosphate (AMP) and adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Recent studies have suggested that AMPK in the hypothalamus regulates energy metabolism by integrating inputs from multiple peptide hormones, neurotransmitters and nutrients. Alteration of hypothalamic AMPK activity leads to change in food intake and body weight[11-13]. mTOR, a highly conserved serine-threonine kinase, has been reported to serve as an intracellular ATP sensor. *In vitro* studies have demonstrated that cellular levels of ATP regulate mTOR signaling[14]. Aberrant mTOR activity is linked to the development of cancer, diabetes and obesity[15]. Significant elevation of mTOR signaling has been observed in liver and skeletal muscle of insulin-resistant obese rats maintained on a high fat diet[16]. In contrast, absence of the mTOR downstream target, S6 kinase 1, protects against diet-induced obesity and improves insulin sensitivity in mice[17]. mTOR signaling in hypothalamic neurons is involved in neuronal sensing of nutrient availability and regulates food intake and energy balance[9]. These observations suggest that mTOR plays an important role in central neuronal control of nutrient intake and energy balance. Further studies indicate that mTOR signaling is a potential downstream pathway for food intake regulation in response to hypothalamic AMPK[18], likely through the mediation of tuberous sclerosis complex 2, a known inhibitor of mTOR signaling[19]. Thus, food intake and nutrient metabolism may be coordinately regulated by linking AMPK and mTOR signaling pathways in the hypothalamus. These observations have motivated extensive studies of hypothalamic fuel sensing mechanisms and hypothalamic regulation of energy metabolism[7]. In contrast, virtually no attention has been focused on fuel sensing by the gastrointestinal tract, despite its critical role in the regulation of food intake.

GASTRIC mTOR IS A FUEL SENSOR INTEGRATING FUEL SUPPLY WITH HORMONE PRODUCTION

A series of studies have identified mTOR as a potential candidate of fuel sensor in the gastric mucosa because of its expression in a distinct group of the gastric endocrine cells, its reciprocal relationship with energy status and its role in the regulation of gastric hormone production[1,5,20].

Co-localization of mTOR signaling molecules in gastric neuroendocrine cells

Chromogranin A is a widely recognized marker of neuroendocrine cells, including those of the stomach, large and small intestine, adrenal medulla and pancreatic islets[21]. It is also an excellent marker for neuroendocrine tumors[22]. In the gastric fundus, the active forms of mTOR signaling molecules express in cells located in the basal one third of the gastric mucosa. One third of chromogranin A-immunoreactive cells express phospho-S6K1, the downstream target of mTOR. The majority of the mTOR positive endocrine cells are ghrelin positive with a small fraction of cells stained positive for gastrin immunoreactivity. No mTOR signaling molecule is located within somatostatin immunoreactive cells[20]. These studies suggest that mTOR signaling may selectively influence the function of a subpopulation of gastric endocrine cells.

A reciprocal relationship between gastric mTOR signaling and energy status at the organism level

Gastric mTOR signaling also senses the body energy status. Gastric mTOR activity decreases in 48 h fasted mice relative to fed animals. In contrast, there is a significant increase in gastric phospho-mTOR (Ser2448) and phospho-S6 (Ser235/236) expression in obese mice relative to lean animals[5]. Gastric mTOR signaling is therefore reciprocally related with the short- and long-term changes in nutritional status at the organism level.

Gastric mTOR and hormone production

Numerous peptides are synthesized and released from distinct populations of secretory neuroendocrine cells throughout the gastrointestinal tract[23]. Their roles in the regulation of gastrointestinal function have been well characterized for many years and it is now becoming evident that they also modulate feeding behavior and energy metabolism *via* distinct mechanisms. Major neuroendocrine products have been identified as gastrin in G

cells, histamine and uroguanylin in enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cells, somatostatin in D cells, serotonin in EC cells and ghrelin in X/A-like cells[23,24]. Hormones secreted from gastric endocrine cells bind to receptors located in the hypothalamus to regulate food intake and energy metabolism[1]. The fuel sensing mechanism is critical for the regulation of gastrointestinal hormone synthesis and secretion and therefore provides a fine tuning for the peripheral and central control of feeding behavior and energy homeostasis.

Ghrelin: In 1999, ghrelin was isolated from the human and rat stomach as the endogenous ligand for the growth hormone secretagogue-receptor (GHS-R)[25]; it is synthesized mainly by X/A-like cells in the gastric mucosa and secreted into the circulation[26]. Several molecular forms of ghrelin are found in the stomach and circulation: the 28 amino acid ghrelin with n-octanoylated serine in position 3; des-acyl ghrelin, an identical peptide in which the third amino acid serine is not acylated; and the 27 amino acid des-glutamine 14 ghrelin produced by alternative splicing of the ghrelin gene[24]. Another putative proghrelin peptide, termed "obestatin", has been proposed[27] but biochemical and functional evidence supporting its existence has not been forthcoming. Octanoylation is necessary for ghrelin to bind with its receptor, GHS-R. Ghrelin-O-acyltransferase, the enzyme responsible for ghrelin acylation, has been recently characterized as a member of the Membrane Bound O-Acyltransferases family[28,29]. Ghrelin has been reported to exercise a broad array of functions including control of food intake[30] and glucose metabolism[31]. Exogenous ghrelin induces adiposity in rodents by stimulating an acute increase in food intake, as well as a reduction in fat utilization[32]. Blocking the action of ghrelin by either its receptor antagonism[33] or interfering with its availability for its receptor by neutralizing antibodies[34] or Spiegelmer RNA[35] have been reported to show some effects on reduction of food intake and body weight, although the immunization against ghrelin fails to cause long-term body weight reduction. Ghrelin exerts its orexigenic effect *via* a mechanism involving the central nervous system; at least part of the orexigenic effect of ghrelin is mediated by up-regulating the genes encoding orexigenic peptides neuropeptide Y (NPY) and agouti-related peptide (AgRP)[36] in the hypothalamus. During fasting, ghrelin secretion increases[37]. Conversely, plasma ghrelin concentration decreases in most obese subjects[38] except in Prader-Willi syndrome[39]. Ghrelin and its receptor are expressed in human and rat pancreatic islets[40]. Ghrelin inhibits glucose stimulated insulin secretion in a dose-dependent manner *in vitro*[41]. Intravenous ghrelin injection decreases plasma insulin and increases plasma glucose levels, likely by inhibition of insulin secretion[41]. Absence of ghrelin in ob/ob mice lowers blood glucose substantially even though it does not decrease food intake or body weight[42].

The secretion of ghrelin is tightly coupled to the fasting or fed state[43]. While it is presumed that precise control in the production and secretion of ghrelin is critical for the maintenance of energy balance, the molecular mechanisms by which ghrelin producing cells modulate transcription and translation of ghrelin to match overall energy status remain largely unknown. A recent study has demonstrated that gastric mTOR is a critical molecule coordinating the ghrelin production with energy supply levels. In gastric mucosa, mTOR signaling molecules are located mainly in the ghrelin-positive cells. More than 90% of ghrelin-positive cells stain positively for mTOR signaling molecules. There exists a reciprocal relationship between gastric mTOR signaling and the expression and secretion of ghrelin during changes in energy status. Inhibition of gastric mTOR signaling increases expression of gastric ghrelin and circulating ghrelin. Conversely, activation of gastric mTOR signaling attenuates the expression and secretion of ghrelin. All these data support the concept that gastric mTOR activity is reciprocally linked to the production of ghrelin[5].

Gastrin: Gastrin is an acid secretagogue peptide discovered by Edkins[44] in 1906. Gastrin stimulation of ECL cells results in the increased synthesis and release of histamine, which then induces acid secretion by binding to the H receptors located on parietal cells[45]. Other major physiological functions of gastrin on the gastrointestinal tract includes functioning as a growth/differentiation factor[46]. Gastrin release is stimulated by vagal impulses during the cephalic phase and by intramural neural reflexes as well as by the presence of food constituent in the gastric lumen during the gastric phase of acid secretion[47]. Increased production of hydrochloric acid lowers intragastric pH and inhibits further secretion of gastrin[48]. Gastric mTOR signaling may be involved in the regulation of gastrin synthesis and secretion in a proportion of gastric G cells. Only 1/3 of gastrin cells contain mTOR signaling molecules, suggesting that regulation of gastrin synthesis and secretion may involve multiple mechanisms[20].

Somatostatin: Somatostatin was originally isolated as a hypothalamic somatotropin-release inhibiting factor[49] and was soon found to potently inhibit the secretion of multiple hormones, including gastrin[50]. However, production of somatostatin appears not to be affected by gastric mTOR. No mTOR activity is detected in somatostatin positive cells. Furthermore, inhibition of gastric mTOR signaling by rapamycin demonstrates no effect on the synthesis and secretion of somatostatin[20].

All of this evidence supports that mTOR signaling selectively modulates the production of gastric hormones. The differential regulation of gastric hormones by mTOR signaling may provide an alternative strategy for the development of novel therapeutics for obesity and other disorders of energy metabolism.

GASTRIC FUEL SENSING AND ENERGY METABOLISM

In the central nervous system, fuel substrates such as glu-

cose, fatty acids and amino acids, or hormones including leptin and insulin, act on the hypothalamic neurons to inform the energy metabolism regulating center of the energy status[3]. Specific populations of "glucosensing" neurons have been identified[51]. In the hypothalamic arcuate nucleus, pro-opiomelanocortin neuron is the glucose-excited neuron, while NPY neuron is inhibited by glucose. These neurons form the neuronal circuits to monitor and integrate the quantitative and temporal changes in glucose concentration[51]. By regulating their activity and neurotransmitter release, these neurons coordinate the central glucose level with the peripheral glucose production and utilization to maintain the glucose homeostasis[3,51].

How hypothalamic neurons sense the energy supply is being actively explored. Studies by Cota *et al*[9] strongly support the notion that mTOR is a critical intracellular molecule within hypothalamic neurons to coordinate the energy supply with food intake and energy metabolism. Although mTOR and S6K1 are widely expressed in a variety of tissues within the CNS, the phosphorylated form of these two kinases is abundantly localized in the hypothalamus, particularly in the NPY/AgRP neurons. Activity of the mTOR pathway in the hypothalamus is tightly linked with energy supply. mTOR activity decreases during fasting and its activity conversely increases during re-feeding. Central administration of leucine, a branch chained amino acid, decreases food intake and body weight by activation of the hypothalamic mTOR signaling. Leptin stimulates hypothalamic mTOR activity and inhibition of mTOR signaling blunts the anorectic effect of leptin[9]. Hypothalamus specific expression of dominant negative S6K results in an increase in food intake, whereas expression of constitutively active S6K decreases food intake[52]. These observations suggest that mTOR is a critical fuel sensor in the hypothalamus.

Inhibition of mTOR signaling by rapamycin has been demonstrated to increase food intake. Such an orexigenic effect of rapamycin may be mediated by ghrelin. Intraperitoneal injection of rapamycin stimulates ghrelin secretion and expression. Ghrelin receptor antagonist D-Lys-3-GH-releasing peptide-6 or ghrelin receptor deletion abolishes the rapamycin-induced increment in food intake despite that plasma ghrelin remains elevated[5]. Together with the observation that mTOR is selectively expressed in a subpopulation of gastric endocrine cells and its activity is reciprocally related with the energy level, we propose that gastric mTOR is a peripheral fuel sensor integrating the energy supply with the food intake and energy metabolism by alteration of ghrelin production. Defining the mTOR signaling pathway to inhibit the production of acyl ghrelin, the active form of ghrelin, would shift therapeutic focus to gastric targets.

CONCLUSION

The fuel sensing mechanism in the central nervous system is critical for energy homeostasis. However, the anatomical structure and location of the hypothalamus pose significant hurdles for therapy targeting this organ. Searching for peripheral targets is appealing. Novel evidence suggests that mTOR is a critical regulatory molecule in gastric ghrelin cells and that its activity is linked to energy supply through modulation of the production of acyl ghrelin. Further studies will aim to advance our understanding of intracellular processes in the production of ghrelin and to provide new information on the integration of cellular activities of gastric endocrine cells with overall nutrient availability. Results of these new investigations will yield new insights relevant to treatment strategies for human obesity.

REFERENCES

1 **Cummings DE**, Overduin J. Gastrointestinal regulation of food intake. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 13-23
2 **Havel PJ**. Peripheral signals conveying metabolic information to the brain: short-term and long-term regulation of food intake and energy homeostasis. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2001; **226**: 963-977
3 **Cota D**, Proulx K, Seeley RJ. The role of CNS fuel sensing in energy and glucose regulation. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 2158-2168
4 **Mori H**, Inoki K, Münzberg H, Opland D, Faouzi M, Villanueva EC, Ikenoue T, Kwiatkowski D, MacDougald OA, Myers MG, Guan KL. Critical role for hypothalamic mTOR activity in energy balance. *Cell Metab* 2009; **9**: 362-374
5 **Xu G**, Li Y, An W, Li S, Guan Y, Wang N, Tang C, Wang X, Zhu Y, Li X, Mulholland MW, Zhang W. Gastric mammalian target of rapamycin signaling regulates ghrelin production and food intake. *Endocrinology* 2009; **150**: 3637-3644
6 **Hill JO**, Wyatt HR, Reed GW, Peters JC. Obesity and the environment: where do we go from here? *Science* 2003; **299**: 853-855
7 **Sandoval D**, Cota D, Seeley RJ. The integrative role of CNS fuel-sensing mechanisms in energy balance and glucose regulation. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2008; **70**: 513-535
8 **Claret M**, Smith MA, Batterham RL, Selman C, Choudhury AI, Fryer LG, Clements M, Al-Qassab H, Heffron H, Xu AW, Speakman JR, Barsh GS, Viollet B, Vaulont S, Ashford ML, Carling D, Withers DJ. AMPK is essential for energy homeostasis regulation and glucose sensing by POMC and AgRP neurons. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 2325-2336
9 **Cota D**, Proulx K, Smith KA, Kozma SC, Thomas G, Woods SC, Seeley RJ. Hypothalamic mTOR signaling regulates food intake. *Science* 2006; **312**: 927-930
10 **Saha AK**, Persons K, Safer JD, Luo Z, Holick MF, Ruderman NB. AMPK regulation of the growth of cultured human keratinocytes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2006; **349**: 519-524
11 **Minokoshi Y**, Shiuchi T, Lee S, Suzuki A, Okamoto S. Role of hypothalamic AMP-kinase in food intake regulation. *Nutrition* 2008; **24**: 786-790
12 **Minokoshi Y**, Alquier T, Furukawa N, Kim YB, Lee A, Xue B, Mu J, Foufelle F, Ferré P, Birnbaum MJ, Stuck BJ, Kahn BB. AMP-kinase regulates food intake by responding to hormonal and nutrient signals in the hypothalamus. *Nature* 2004; **428**: 569-574
13 **Andersson U**, Filipsson K, Abbott CR, Woods A, Smith K, Bloom SR, Carling D, Small CJ. AMP-activated protein kinase plays a role in the control of food intake. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 12005-12008
14 **Dennis PB**, Jaeschke A, Saitoh M, Fowler B, Kozma SC, Thomas G. Mammalian TOR: a homeostatic ATP sensor. *Science* 2001; **294**: 1102-1105
15 **Inoki K**, Corradetti MN, Guan KL. Dysregulation of the

TSC-mTOR pathway in human disease. *Nat Genet* 2005; **37**: 19-24
16 **Khamzina L**, Veilleux A, Bergeron S, Marette A. Increased activation of the mammalian target of rapamycin pathway in liver and skeletal muscle of obese rats: possible involvement in obesity-linked insulin resistance. *Endocrinology* 2005; **146**: 1473-1481
17 **Um SH**, Frigerio F, Watanabe M, Picard F, Joaquin M, Sticker M, Fumagalli S, Allegrini PR, Kozma SC, Auwerx J, Thomas G. Absence of S6K1 protects against age- and diet-induced obesity while enhancing insulin sensitivity. *Nature* 2004; **431**: 200-205
18 **Blanco Martínez de Morentin P**, González CR, Saha AK, Martins L, Diéguez C, Vidal-Puig A, Tena-Sempere M, López M. Hypothalamic AMP-activated protein kinase as a mediator of whole body energy balance. *Rev Endocr Metab Disord* 2011; **12**: 127-140
19 **Inoki K**, Zhu T, Guan KL. TSC2 mediates cellular energy response to control cell growth and survival. *Cell* 2003; **115**: 577-590
20 **Xu G**, Li Y, An W, Zhao J, Xiang X, Ding L, Li Z, Guan Y, Wang X, Tang C, Zhu Y, Wang N, Li X, Mulholland M, Zhang W. Regulation of gastric hormones by systemic rapamycin. *Peptides* 2010; **31**: 2185-2192
21 **Wilson BS**, Lloyd RV. Detection of chromogranin in neuroendocrine cells with a monoclonal antibody. *Am J Pathol* 1984; **115**: 458-468
22 **Bajetta E**, Ferrari L, Martinetti A, Celio L, Procopio G, Artale S, Zilembo N, Di Bartolomeo M, Seregni E, Bombardieri E. Chromogranin A, neuron specific enolase, carcinoembryonic antigen, and hydroxyindole acetic acid evaluation in patients with neuroendocrine tumors. *Cancer* 1999; **86**: 858-865
23 **Dockray GJ**, Varro A, Dimaline R. Gastric endocrine cells: gene expression, processing, and targeting of active products. *Physiol Rev* 1996; **76**: 767-798
24 **Kojima M**, Kangawa K. Ghrelin: structure and function. *Physiol Rev* 2005; **85**: 495-522
25 **Kojima M**, Hosoda H, Date Y, Nakazato M, Matsuo H, Kangawa K. Ghrelin is a growth-hormone-releasing acylated peptide from stomach. *Nature* 1999; **402**: 656-660
26 **Date Y**, Kojima M, Hosoda H, Sawaguchi A, Mondal MS, Suganuma T, Matsukura S, Kangawa K, Nakazato M. Ghrelin, a novel growth hormone-releasing acylated peptide, is synthesized in a distinct endocrine cell type in the gastrointestinal tracts of rats and humans. *Endocrinology* 2000; **141**: 4255-4261
27 **Zhang JV**, Ren PG, Avsian-Kretchmer O, Luo CW, Rauch R, Klein C, Hsueh AJ. Obestatin, a peptide encoded by the ghrelin gene, opposes ghrelin's effects on food intake. *Science* 2005; **310**: 996-999
28 **Yang J**, Brown MS, Liang G, Grishin NV, Goldstein JL. Identification of the acyltransferase that octanoylates ghrelin, an appetite-stimulating peptide hormone. *Cell* 2008; **132**: 387-396
29 **Gutierrez JA**, Solenberg PJ, Perkins DR, Willency JA, Knierman MD, Jin Z, Witcher DR, Luo S, Onyia JE, Hale JE. Ghrelin octanoylation mediated by an orphan lipid transferase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 6320-6325
30 **Gil-Campos M**, Aguilera CM, Cañete R, Gil A. Ghrelin: a hormone regulating food intake and energy homeostasis. *Br J Nutr* 2006; **96**: 201-226
31 **Heppner KM**, Tong J, Kirchner H, Nass R, Tschöp MH. The ghrelin O-acyltransferase-ghrelin system: a novel regulator of glucose metabolism. *Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes* 2011; **18**: 50-55
32 **Nakazato M**, Murakami N, Date Y, Kojima M, Matsuo H, Kangawa K, Matsukura S. A role for ghrelin in the central regulation of feeding. *Nature* 2001; **409**: 194-198
33 **Asakawa A**, Inui A, Kaga T, Katsuura G, Fujimiya M, Fujino MA, Kasuga M. Antagonism of ghrelin receptor reduces food intake and body weight gain in mice. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 947-952
34 **Carlson MJ**, Cummings DE. Prospects for an anti-ghrelin vaccine to treat obesity. *Mol Interv* 2006; **6**: 249-252
35 **Helmling S**, Maasch C, Eulberg D, Buchner K, Schröder W, Lange C, Vonhoff S, Wlotzka B, Tschöp MH, Rosewicz S, Klussmann S. Inhibition of ghrelin action in vitro and in vivo by an RNA-Spiegelmer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 13174-13179
36 **Chen HY**, Trumbauer ME, Chen AS, Weingarth DT, Adams JR, Frazier EG, Shen Z, Marsh DJ, Feighner SD, Guan XM, Ye Z, Nargund RP, Smith RG, Van der Ploeg LH, Howard AD, MacNeil DJ, Qian S. Orexigenic action of peripheral ghrelin is mediated by neuropeptide Y and agouti-related protein. *Endocrinology* 2004; **145**: 2607-2612
37 **Cummings DE**, Purnell JQ, Frayo RS, Schmidova K, Wisse BE, Weigle DS. A preprandial rise in plasma ghrelin levels suggests a role in meal initiation in humans. *Diabetes* 2001; **50**: 1714-1719
38 **Tschöp M**, Weyer C, Tataranni PA, Devanarayan V, Ravussin E, Heiman ML. Circulating ghrelin levels are decreased in human obesity. *Diabetes* 2001; **50**: 707-709
39 **Cummings DE**, Clement K, Purnell JQ, Vaisse C, Foster KE, Frayo RS, Schwartz MW, Basdevant A, Weigle DS. Elevated plasma ghrelin levels in Prader Willi syndrome. *Nat Med* 2002; **8**: 643-644
40 **Date Y**, Nakazato M, Hashiguchi S, Dezaki K, Mondal MS, Hosoda H, Kojima M, Kangawa K, Arima T, Matsuo H, Yada T, Matsukura S. Ghrelin is present in pancreatic alpha-cells of humans and rats and stimulates insulin secretion. *Diabetes* 2002; **51**: 124-129
41 **Dezaki K**, Hosoda H, Kakei M, Hashiguchi S, Watanabe M, Kangawa K, Yada T. Endogenous ghrelin in pancreatic islets restricts insulin release by attenuating Ca2+ signaling in beta-cells: implication in the glycemic control in rodents. *Diabetes* 2004; **53**: 3142-3151
42 **Sun Y**, Asnicar M, Saha PK, Chan L, Smith RG. Ablation of ghrelin improves the diabetic but not obese phenotype of ob/ob mice. *Cell Metab* 2006; **3**: 379-386
43 **Kim MS**, Yoon CY, Park KH, Shin CS, Park KS, Kim SY, Cho BY, Lee HK. Changes in ghrelin and ghrelin receptor expression according to feeding status. *Neuroreport* 2003; **14**: 1317-1320
44 **Edkins JS**. The chemical mechanism of gastric secretion. *J Physiol* 1906; **34**: 133-144
45 **SMITH AN**. Gastrin and histamine release. *J Physiol* 1954; **123**: 71P-72P
46 **Ekundayo AA**, Lee CY, Goodlad RA. Gastrin and the growth of the gastrointestinal tract. *Gut* 1995; **36**: 203-208
47 **Sachs G**, Zeng N, Prinz C. Physiology of isolated gastric endocrine cells. *Annu Rev Physiol* 1997; **59**: 243-256
48 **Uvnäs-Wallenstein K**, Uvnäs B, Nilsson G. Quantitative aspects of the vagal control of gastrin release in cats. *Acta Physiol Scand* 1976; **96**: 19-28
49 **Ling N**, Burgus R, Rivier J, Vale W, Brazeau P. The use of mass spectrometry in deducing the sequence of somatostatin--a hypothalamic polypeptide that inhibits the secretion of growth hormone. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1973; **50**: 127-133
50 **Raptis S**, Dollinger HC, von Berger L, Schlegel W, Schröder KE, Pfeiffer EF. Effects of somatostatin on gastric secretion and gastrin release in man. *Digestion* 1975; **13**: 15-26
51 **Levin BE**, Routh VH, Kang L, Sanders NM, Dunn-Meynell AA. Neuronal glucosensing: what do we know after 50 years? *Diabetes* 2004; **53**: 2521-2528
52 **Blouet C**, Ono H, Schwartz GJ. Mediobasal hypothalamic p70 S6 kinase 1 modulates the control of energy homeostasis. *Cell Metab* 2008; **8**: 459-467

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.114

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 114-122
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

REVIEW

Gene and cell therapy based treatment strategies for inflammatory bowel diseases

Sander van der Marel, Anna Majowicz, Sander van Deventer, Harald Petry, Daniel W Hommes, Valerie Ferreira

Sander van der Marel, Anna Majowicz, Sander van Deventer, Harald Petry, Valerie Ferreira, Department of Research and Development, Amsterdam Molecular Therapeutics BV, 1105 BA Amsterdam, The Netherlands
Sander van der Marel, Anna Majowicz, Sander van Deventer, Daniel W Hommes, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Leiden University Medical Center, 2333 ZA Leiden, The Netherlands
Author contributions: van der Marel S and Ferreira V performed literature searches, wrote the review and made editorial corrections; Majowicz A, van Deventer S, Petry H and Hommes DW contributed conceptually to the work, reviewed the manuscript and assisted with the editing of the paper.
Supported by A grant from the Broad Medical Research Program of The Broad Foundation, Proposal No. IBD-029 5R (to van der Marel S and Hommes DW)
Correspondence to: Sander van der Marel, MD, Department of Research and Development, Amsterdam Molecular Therapeutics BV, Meibergdreef 61, 1105 BA Amsterdam, The Netherlands. s.vandermarel@amtbiopharma.com
Telephone: +31-20-56634 39 Fax: +31-20-5669272
Received: May 28, 2011 Revised: August 12, 2011
Accepted: August 19, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

Inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) are a group of chronic inflammatory disorders most commonly affecting young adults. Currently available therapies can result in induction and maintenance of remission, but are not curative and have sometimes important side effects. Advances in basic research in IBD have provided new therapeutic opportunities to target the inflammatory process involved. Gene and cell therapy approaches are suitable to prevent inflammation in the gastrointestinal tract and show therefore potential in the treatment of IBD. In this review, we present the current progress in the field of both gene and cell therapy and future prospects in the context of IBD. Regarding gene therapy, we focus on viral vectors and their applications in preclinical models. The focus for cell therapy is on regulatory T lymphocytes and mesenchymal stromal cells, their potential for the treatment of IBD and the progress made in both preclinical models and clinical trials.

Key words: Viral vector; Gene therapy; Cell therapy; Inflammatory bowel diseases; Immune tolerance; Regulatory T lymphocytes; Mesenchymal stromal cells

Peer reviewers: Julio Chebli, Professor, Department of Medicine, Federal University of Juiz de Fora, 296 Maria Jose Leal, Juiz de Fora 36036247, Brazil; Alkiviadis Efthymiou, Dr., Bioclinic Private Hospital, 75 Ermou Street, Thessaloniki 54623, Greece; I Michael Leitman, Dr., Chief of General Surgery, Department of Surgery, Albert Einstein College of Medicine-Beth Israel Medical Center, 10 Union Square East, 2M, New York, NY 10003, United States

van der Marel S, Majowicz A, van Deventer S, Petry H, Hommes DW, Ferreira V. Gene and cell therapy based treatment strategies for inflammatory bowel diseases. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 114-122 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/114.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.114

INTRODUCTION

Inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) are chronic inflammatory diseases most commonly affecting young adults[1-3]. The exact pathogenesis is unknown, but it is widely accepted that IBD result from an inappropriate response of a defective mucosal immune system to the intestinal flora and other luminal antigens[4-6].

IBD include two major disorders: ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD). These disorders have distinct and overlapping pathologic and clinical characteristics[7]. UC is a relapsing non-transmural inflammatory condition that is limited to the colon[8]. Patients char-

acteristically present with bloody diarrhoea, passage of pus, mucus, or both, and abdominal cramping[8]. CD is a relapsing, transmural inflammatory disease of the gastrointestinal (GI) mucosa that can involve the entire GI tract from the mouth to the anus[8]. Patients characteristically present with discontinuous involvement of various portions of the GI tract and the development of complications including strictures, abscesses, or fistulas[8]. IBD are associated with a considerable reduction in quality of life of the patients[9-11] and currently no curative treatment options are available. Conventional therapeutics cannot prevent complications in IBD and although novel treatment strategies, including TNF-neutralizing antibodies, have greatly increased the therapeutic armamentarium, many patients still have to undergo surgery[12]. For this reason, the development of new treatments is required to prevent initiation of inflammation and, more importantly, allow for long-term remission. Gene and cell therapy approaches are more and more considered in relation to the prevention of inflammation in the GI tract. Gene therapy consists of the insertion or alteration of genes within an individual's cells to treat disease. Cell therapy describes the process of introducing new cells into a tissue in order to treat a disease. Both approaches have been applied successfully in a clinical setting for a broad range of diseases either separately or together, including early stage clinical development for IBD[13-23]. Here we discuss current progress in the field and future treatment prospects in the context of IBD.

GENE THERAPY AS TREATMENT FOR IBD

To facilitate the uptake and the expression of the transgene in the target cell, a vector is required. Vectors can be non-viral or viral. The choice of a safe and reliable vector that can mediate long-term gene transfer to both dividing and non-dividing cells is of vital importance for a gene therapy approach. Although viral vectors are created from pathogenic viruses, they are modified in such a way as to minimize their pathogenicity. This usually involves the deletion of a part of the viral genome critical for viral replication. Such a virus can efficiently infect cells and has the potential for long term stable gene expression. In the gene therapy section of this review we will focus on viral vectors that have been used successfully in gene therapy applications in recent years[14,15], are able to target the gut[24-32] and can therefore be considered for gene delivery in the GI tract, namely retro-, lenti-, adeno- and adeno associated viral vectors (for an overview see: Tables 1-3 or Figure 1).

For an overview of non-viral delivery methods to the intestine we recommend the review from O'Neill *et al*[33].

Retro- and lentiviral vectors

Retroviral vectors were used for the first time in a clinical setting over 20 years ago[34-36] and are among the most commonly used vectors in gene therapy. Retroviral particles require disruption of the nuclear membrane to gain access and therefore need cell division for entering the cell[37]. Retroviruses have been demonstrated to be able to transduce intestinal epithelial cells[24-26], although at a low efficiency. Alternatively, intestinal epithelial cells can be transduced efficiently by lentiviruses[27] which are a subclass of retroviruses. The lentiviruses have an advantage over retroviruses as vectors in gene therapy because of their ability to transduce non-dividing cells[38,39]. Furthermore the lentivirus did not induce mucosal damage or distribute beyond the distal colon[27] and appeared therefore as a potential vector for gene delivery in the treatment of IBD.

However, a safety issue to be considered with both retro- and lentiviral vectors is their potential to integrate at many sites in the human genome[40,41]. Those genomic integrations can result in insertional mutagenesis causing cancer development as has been observed in clinical trials[19,42-44]. Even though significant improvements in lentiviral vector safety have been achieved in recent years[45], the concern for random integration remains and needs to be addressed[46,47] before these vectors can be considered as safe tools for gene therapy applications in IBD.

Adenoviral vectors

Despite the fact that adenoviruses are pathogenic viruses and can cause morbidity, especially in immune-compromised patients[48], adenoviral vectors have been frequently used in gene therapy due to their broad tissue tropism and lack of integration into the host genome[49]. Gene therapy using adenoviral vectors has shown potential in the treatment of colitis in preclinical models[28-30]. For example, a single systemic injection of an adenoviral vector carrying the interleukin-10 (IL-10) transgene was sufficient not only to prevent the onset of colitis but also to induce clinical and histological remission in mice with established disease[29]. Additionally Schmiedlin-Ren *et al*[50] demonstrated that intestinal epithelial cells of IBD patients can be efficiently transduced *ex vivo* by adenoviral vectors. All together, these results suggest that targeting of the inflamed intestine through the luminal route can be possible using adenoviral vectors[50].

However, hematologic and hepatic toxicities were observed in animal studies after injection with high vector doses[51-53], which imply that further development in generating a new type of adenoviral vector is necessary before considering clinical applications. Recently a gutted adenovirus, devoid of all viral coding sequences, was shown to induce less toxicity[54] after delivery. However, this finding, if promising for future therapeutic applications, needs further exploration.

Adeno-associated virus vectors

The non-pathogenic, replication-deficient adeno-associated virus (AAV) holds promise for gene therapy. The AAV vector has a good safety profile as it remains predominantly episomal[55]. In general, 99% of recombinant AAV are maintained as episomal copies[56], indicating a

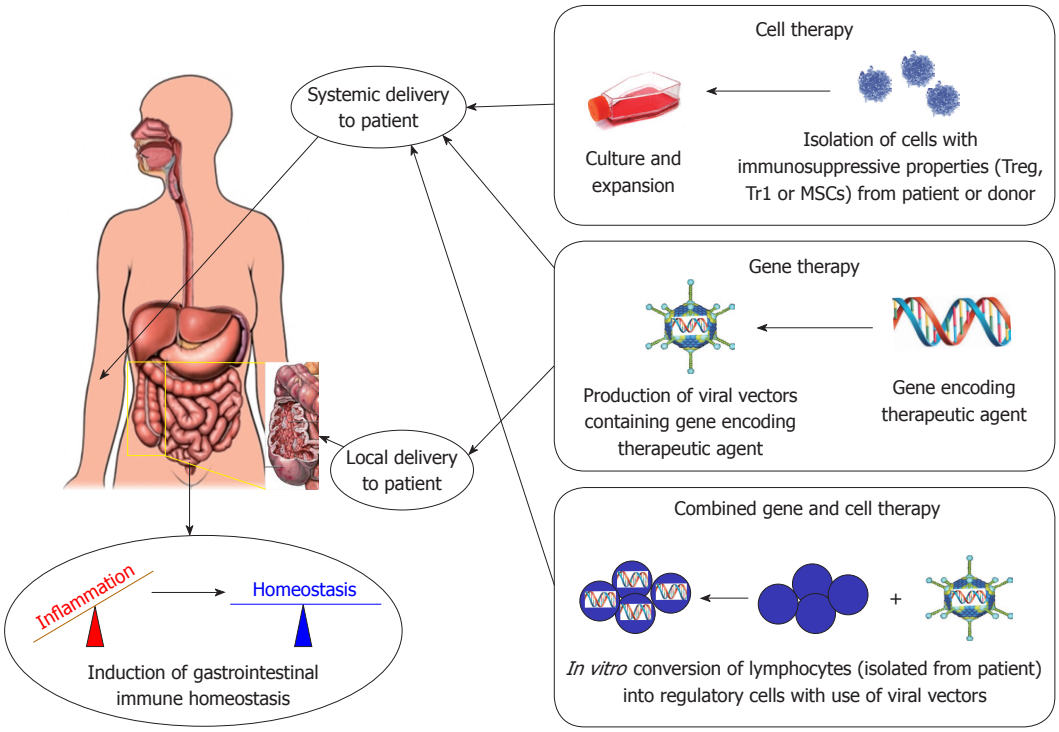


Figure 1 Emerging treatments for inflammatory bowel diseases. Overview of the gene and cell therapy based treatment strategies for inflammatory bowel diseases as discussed in this review. Treg: $CD4^+CD25^{high}FOXP3^+$ regulatory T cell; **Tr1: Type 1 regulatory T cell; MSC: Mesenchymal stromal cells.**

Table 1 Overview of the gene therapy based treatment strategies for inflammatory bowel diseases as discussed in this review

	Viral vector	Gut targeting	Reference for gut targeting	Status of development	Reference for status of development
Gene therapy	Retro- and lentiviral	Yes	[24-27]	Not performed	N/A
	Adenoviral	Yes	[28-30]	Preclinical	[28-30]
	AAV	Yes	[31,32]	Not performed	N/A

The status of development refers to research which has already been performed. AAV: Adeno-associated virus; N/A: Not applicable.

Table 2 Overview of the cell therapy based treatment strategies for inflammatory bowel diseases as discussed in this review

	Cell type	Generated from	Reference for generating cell type	Status of development	Reference for status of development
Cell therapy	Treg	Peripheral blood	[21,101,132-134]	Preclinical	[93,96]
	Tr1	Peripheral blood	[93,135]	Phase I clinical trial	(Unpublished data, UEGW 2010-ABS-577)
	Mesenchymal stromal cells	Adipose tissue/bone marrow	[17,22,23]	Phase I clinical trial	[17,22,23]

The status of development refers to research which has already been performed. Treg: $CD4^+CD25^{high}FOXP3^+$ regulatory T cell; Tr1: Type 1 regulatory T cell; UEGW: United European Gastroenterology Week.

Table 3 Overview of the combined gene and cell therapy based treatment strategies for inflammatory bowel diseases as discussed in this review

	Applied strategy	Viral vector used	Reference for viral vector used	Status of development	Reference for status of development
Combined gene and cell therapy	*Ex vivo* generated Treg/Tr1	Retrovirus	[113,115]	Preclinical	[113,115]
	T cell receptor transgenic Treg	Retrovirus	[116]	Preclinical	[116]

The status of development refers to research which has already been performed. Treg: $CD4^+CD25^{high}FOXP3^+$ regulatory T cell; Tr1: Type 1 regulatory T cell.

very low risk of insertional mutagenesis compared with retroviral vectors. Furthermore, AAV vectors are able to transduce both dividing and quiescent cells[57,58] and were demonstrated to be effective as gene therapy vectors in several promising preclinical models for autoimmune- and inflammatory disorders[59-66]. The therapeutic potential of the AAV as a vector in gene therapy has also been demonstrated in a clinical setting in recent studies[67-77].

AAV vectors were shown to be able to target the GI tract[31,32] and long term transgene expression post AAV treatment was reported which, in relation with the high turn-over of intestinal cells, suggests that transduction of the slow-dividing intestinal stem cells was achieved[31,32]. However, no data are presently available about the treatment of experimental colitis with AAV vectors.

CELL THERAPY AS TREATMENT FOR IBD

Cell-based therapies aim to introduce new cells into a tissue in order to treat a disease and can permit the replacement of function[78], or restore the homeostasis of the immune system[79]. In the last 50 years hematopoietic stem cell transplantation has been developed as a curative option for inherited disorders and hematologic or lymphoid cancers[13,80], leading the way toward innovative therapies for other illnesses. Recent results obtained from animal models and early human clinical trials in graft *versus* host disease but also CD showed that either regulatory T lymphocytes or mesenchymal stromal cells (MSCs) may be of clinical relevance for the treatment of IBD (for an overview see: Tables 1-3 or Figure 1).

Regulatory T lymphocytes

The immune system contains a population of T cells, called regulatory T lymphocytes that are specialized in immune suppression[81,82]. Low level autoimmunity may occur in the intestine as a result of the presence of the microbial flora or auto-reactive T cells. Regulatory T lymphocytes are generated in the mesenteric lymph nodes and subsequently migrate and expand in the gut[83], thereby preventing progress to chronic autoimmune disease[84,85]. These cells are able to suppress an immune response both by cell contact [e.g. killing or functional modulation of antigen presenting cells (APCs) or effector T cells] and soluble factor dependent mechanisms (e.g. secretion of immunosuppressive cytokines or deprivation of cytokines necessary for the expansion/survival of responder T cells)[86,87]. Antigen specific regulatory T lymphocytes have been described as having more therapeutic efficacy than polyclonal regulatory T cells[88-90]. In IBD the antigenic targets are not totally defined[6] and cell therapy would have to be restricted to polyclonal cells. However, regulatory T lymphocytes don't need to be antigen specific in order to suppress immune responses as a result of bystander suppression and infectious tolerance[91,92]. These are general mechanisms through which regulatory T lymphocytes are able to create a regulatory milieu *in vivo*[91,92] and could introduce tolerance in IBD.

Regulatory T lymphocytes were shown to be effective in both the cure and the prevention of experimental colitis in multiple animal models[93-96]. It was shown, for example, that transfer of regulatory T lymphocytes into mice with colitis led to resolution of the lamina propria infiltrate in the intestine and reappearance of normal intestinal architecture[96]. Therefore regulatory T lymphocytes could be used as a therapeutic tool in IBD where their homeostasis is disturbed[97,98].

Among the different T cells with suppressive activity the $CD4^+CD25^{high}FOXP3^+$ regulatory T cell (Treg)[82] and the type 1 regulatory T cell (Tr1)[81] subsets are the most well-defined so far. The Tr1 is typically characterized based on the cytokine production profile ($IL\text{-}10^{high}$)[81] and Treg by the expression of the transcription factor Forkhead box p3 (FOXP3 in humans/Foxp3 in mice), which appears to function as the master regulator in their development and function[99,100].

Treg and Tr1 have the potential to prevent or cure colitis[93-96] and a favourable safety profile was demonstrated in phase I clinical trials[21,101]. Tr1 were shown to have a preliminary efficacy signal in patients in a phase I clinical trial for refractory CD (unpublished data, UEGW 2010-ABS-577). Currently the efficacy of Treg and Tr1 based cell therapy awaits further confirmation from phase Ⅱ/Ⅲ clinical trials but overall these results emphasize that both Treg and Tr1 are promising tools for therapeutic applications in IBD.

MSCs

MSCs are non-haematopoietic stromal cells exhibiting multi-lineage differentiation capacity and the ability to mediate immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory effects[102-105]. The exact mechanism by which MSCs suppress the immune system is not fully understood. It is known, however, that MSCs have immunosuppressive features in common with regulatory T lymphocytes, as for example preventing the maturation of APCs[102] or physically hindering T cells from contacting APCs[103]. Additionally, it was shown that FOXP3 expression confers a greater immunosuppressive potential to MSCs[106].

MSCs can be isolated from various tissues[107-109] and were shown to ameliorate experimental colitis[110,111]. In humans, MSCs obtained from adipose tissue induced healing in perianal fistulas in patients with CD[17]. Furthermore, in a phase I clinical trial, administration of autologous bone marrow-derived MSCs was shown to be safe and feasible in the treatment of refractory CD[22]. Additionally it was demonstrated that *ex vivo* expanded autologous bone marrow-derived MSCs are a safe and feasible approach for intrafistular injections in patients with CD[23]. These results[17,22,23] show potential and await further verification in phase Ⅱ/Ⅲ clinical trials which are currently being conducted.

CAN GENE AND CELL THERAPY OVERLAP IN THE TREATMENT OF IBD?

The phenotype and function of lymphocytes can be

modified using viral vectors, to create tools for a cell therapy approach in the treatment of autoimmune-, and inflammatory disorders[112] and by consequent IBD[113-116]. It was shown that the *ex vivo* targeting of spleen derived $CD4^+$ T cells by a retroviral vector expressing IL-10 was able to generate Tr1 that prevented colitis in an experimental model of IBD[113].

By the same approach, fully functional Treg were generated by transduction of T cells with a Foxp3 transgene. These cells were able to suppress autoimmunity and graft rejection *in vivo*[89,115,117,118]. Furthermore, Hori *et al*[115] showed that the *in vitro* generated Treg prevented colitis in a mice model of IBD.

Additionally it was demonstrated that Treg can be efficiently transduced to express functional antigen-specific receptors[116]. Adoptive transfer of small numbers of these transduced Treg was associated with antigen-specific, dose-dependent amelioration of experimental colitis in mice[116].

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS RELEVANT FOR IBD

The route of therapeutic delivery is important when considering gene or cell therapy in relation with IBD. The mucus lining in the intestine is a barrier for gene transfer *via* the luminal route[119] and the clearance of viral particles by the liver represents a problem for the systemic delivery[120]. Nonetheless, as described above it has been shown that transduction *via* these routes is possible and that long term transgene expression can be achieved. Possible viral vectors, as for example the AAV based viral vectors seem to have the potential to transduce the GI tract, but the optimization of gene targeting to the gut needs to be further explored. This could be achieved by testing different AAV serotypes[121] or modifying the AAV capsid[122]. A promising method is the socalled DNA shuffling method. DNA shuffling is a method whereby genes are rearranged to form hybrid genes with new properties[123]. This can be done using polymerase chain reactions, as described by Cohen[123]. If this approach is used for genes encoding AAV capsid proteins it can allow for the development of cell type specific vectors[124] and thereby shows promise for creating a gut targeting AAV. Furthermore, chemical redirection of the AAV capsid shows potential in engineering vectors with novel tissue tropisms[125]. Chemical engineering refers to a process whereby the amino acids on the surface of the AAV capsid are changed[125]. This method has proved to be successful in redirecting the AAV from liver to skeletal and cardiac muscle following systemic administration in mice[125] and could therefore have potential in directing the AAV to the GI tract.

Due to the presence of stem cells in intestinal crypts[126] the gut is suggested to be an interesting target for therapeutic gene transfer. Every crypt in the intestine contains four to six independent stem cells[126]. Stem cells are believed to divide very rarely[126]. Therefore, these cells could have the potential to permit long term, stable transgene expression after transduction. It has been shown that intestinal stem cells can be transduced *in vitro* using a retroviral vector[127]. Long term transgene expression observed in the gut after AAV vector delivery in mice suggests that transduction of intestinal stem cells is possible *in vivo*[31,32].

FUTURE PROSPECTS

Knowledge of the pathophysiology of IBD is growing and it has become clear that significant genetic as well as phenotypic heterogenecity exists within both CD and UC[128]. These findings offer opportunities for more specifically targeted interventions. Gene or cell therapy based treatment strategies can be adapted and targeted exclusively at certain subgroups within the IBD patient population with characterized genetic defects linked to the impairment of their gut physiology.

Strategies to optimize gene therapy approaches include the use of a tissue specific promoter enabling site specific expression of a transgene. Recently, gut specific promoters have been described[129-131]. The A33-antigen promoter for example strictly depends on the presence of the intestine-specific transcription factor Cdx1 which is essential for the unique intestinal expression pattern of the A33-antigen gene[129,131]. Therefore this promoter is a promising candidate to induce intestine specific expression of a transgene[131].

CONCLUSION

IBD are a group of chronic inflammatory disorders most commonly affecting young adults and currently there is no curative treatment available. A gene therapy approach for the local expression of therapeutic agents in the gut or a cell therapy approach using regulatory T cells or MSCs may offer an alternative treatment for GI inflammation. Both gene and cell therapy approaches have shown promising results in preclinical models of IBD. Cell therapy approaches have been translated to a clinical setting and currently phase Ⅱ/Ⅲ clinical trials for the treatment of refractory CD are in progress. Concerning gene therapy, further development of viral vector delivery to the gut as well as long term efficacy are still needed, but pre-clinical data are promising.

Overall, both gene and cell therapy have the potential to become important players in the next generation of therapeutic agents that will be aimed at unmet medical needs such as those that exist in IBD.

REFERENCES

1 **Haug K**, Schrumpf E, Barstad S, Fluge G, Halvorsen JF. Epidemiology of ulcerative colitis in western Norway. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1988; **23**: 517-522

2 **Haug K**, Schrumpf E, Halvorsen JF, Fluge G, Hamre E, Hamre T, Skjøllingstad R. Epidemiology of Crohn's disease in western Norway. Study group of Inflammatory Bowel Disease in Western Norway. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1989; **24**: 1271-1275

3 **Loftus EV**, Sandborn WJ. Epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2002; **31**: 1-20
4 **Baumgart DC**, Carding SR. Inflammatory bowel disease: cause and immunobiology. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 1627-1640
5 **Abraham C**, Cho JH. Inflammatory bowel disease. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 2066-2078
6 **Kaser A**, Zeissig S, Blumberg RS. Inflammatory bowel disease. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2010; **28**: 573-621
7 **Waterman M**, Xu W, Stempak JM, Milgrom R, Bernstein CN, Griffiths AM, Greenberg GR, Steinhart AH, Silverberg MS. Distinct and overlapping genetic loci in Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis: correlations with pathogenesis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 1936-1942
8 **Baumgart DC**, Sandborn WJ. Inflammatory bowel disease: clinical aspects and established and evolving therapies. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 1641-1657
9 **Graff LA**, Walker JR, Clara I, Lix L, Miller N, Rogala L, Rawsthorne P, Bernstein CN. Stress coping, distress, and health perceptions in inflammatory bowel disease and community controls. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2009; **104**: 2959-2969
10 **Graff LA**, Vincent N, Walker JR, Clara I, Carr R, Ediger J, Miller N, Rogala L, Rawsthorne P, Lix L, Bernstein CN. A population-based study of fatigue and sleep difficulties in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 1882-1889
11 **Lix LM**, Graff LA, Walker JR, Clara I, Rawsthorne P, Rogala L, Miller N, Ediger J, Pretorius T, Bernstein CN. Longitudinal study of quality of life and psychological functioning for active, fluctuating, and inactive disease patterns in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2008; **14**: 1575-1584
12 **Cannom RR**, Kaiser AM, Ault GT, Beart RW, Etzioni DA. Inflammatory bowel disease in the United States from 1998 to 2005: has infliximab affected surgical rates? *Am Surg* 2009; **75**: 976-980
13 **Copelan EA**. Hematopoietic stem-cell transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **354**: 1813-1826
14 **Aiuti A**, Bachoud-Lévi AC, Blesch A, Brenner MK, Cattaneo F, Chiocca EA, Gao G, High KA, Leen AM, Lemoine NR, McNeish IA, Meneguzzi G, Peschanski M, Roncarolo MG, Strayer DS, Tuszynski MH, Waxman DJ, Wilson JM. Progress and prospects: gene therapy clinical trials (part 2). *Gene Ther* 2007; **14**: 1555-1563
15 **Alexander BL**, Ali RR, Alton EW, Bainbridge JW, Braun S, Cheng SH, Flotte TR, Gaspar HB, Grez M, Griesenbach U, Kaplitt MG, Ott MG, Seger R, Simons M, Thrasher AJ, Thrasher AZ, Ylä-Herttuala S. Progress and prospects: gene therapy clinical trials (part 1). *Gene Ther* 2007; **14**: 1439-1447
16 **Hunder NN**, Wallen H, Cao J, Hendricks DW, Reilly JZ, Rodmyre R, Jungbluth A, Gnjatic S, Thompson JA, Yee C. Treatment of metastatic melanoma with autologous CD4+ T cells against NY-ESO-1. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 2698-2703
17 **Garcia-Olmo D**, Herreros D, Pascual I, Pascual JA, Del-Valle E, Zorrilla J, De-La-Quintana P, Garcia-Arranz M, Pascual M. Expanded adipose-derived stem cells for the treatment of complex perianal fistula: a phase II clinical trial. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2009; **52**: 79-86
18 **Aiuti A**, Cattaneo F, Galimberti S, Benninghoff U, Cassani B, Callegaro L, Scaramuzza S, Andolfi G, Mirolo M, Brigida I, Tabucchi A, Carlucci F, Eibl M, Aker M, Slavin S, Al-Mousa H, Al Ghonaium A, Ferster A, Duppenthaler A, Notarangelo L, Wintergerst U, Buckley RH, Bregni M, Marktel S, Valsecchi MG, Rossi P, Ciceri F, Miniero R, Bordignon C, Roncarolo MG. Gene therapy for immunodeficiency due to adenosine deaminase deficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 447-458
19 **Hacein-Bey-Abina S**, Hauer J, Lim A, Picard C, Wang GP, Berry CC, Martinache C, Rieux-Laucat F, Latour S, Belohradsky BH, Leiva L, Sorensen R, Debré M, Casanova JL, Blanche S, Durandy A, Bushman FD, Fischer A, Cavazzana-Calvo M. Efficacy of gene therapy for X-linked severe combined immunodeficiency. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 355-364
20 **Gaudet D**, de Wal J, Tremblay K, Déry S, van Deventer S, Freidig A, Brisson D, Méthot J. Review of the clinical development of alipogene tiparvovec gene therapy for lipoprotein lipase deficiency. *Atheroscler Suppl* 2010; **11**: 55-60
21 **Brunstein CG**, Miller JS, Cao Q, McKenna DH, Hippen KL, Curtsinger J, Defor T, Levine BL, June CH, Rubinstein P, McGlave PB, Blazar BR, Wagner JE. Infusion of ex vivo expanded T regulatory cells in adults transplanted with umbilical cord blood: safety profile and detection kinetics. *Blood* 2011; **117**: 1061-1070
22 **Duijvestein M**, Vos AC, Roelofs H, Wildenberg ME, Wendrich BB, Verspaget HW, Kooy-Winkelaar EM, Koning F, Zwaginga JJ, Fidder HH, Verhaar AP, Fibbe WE, van den Brink GR, Hommes DW. Autologous bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stromal cell treatment for refractory luminal Crohn's disease: results of a phase I study. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1662-1669
23 **Ciccocioppo R**, Bernardo ME, Sgarella A, Maccario R, Avanzini MA, Ubezio C, Minelli A, Alvisi C, Vanoli A, Calliada F, Dionigi P, Perotti C, Locatelli F, Corazza GR. Autologous bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stromal cells in the treatment of fistulising Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 788-798
24 **Lau C**, Soriano HE, Ledley FD, Finegold MJ, Wolfe JH, Birkenmeier EH, Henning SJ. Retroviral gene transfer into the intestinal epithelium. *Hum Gene Ther* 1995; **6**: 1145-1151
25 **Lozier JN**, Yankaskas JR, Ramsey WJ, Chen L, Berschneider H, Morgan RA. Gut epithelial cells as targets for gene therapy of hemophilia. *Hum Gene Ther* 1997; **8**: 1481-1490
26 **Noel RA**, Shukla P, Henning SJ. Optimization of gene transfer into intestinal epithelial cells using a retroviral vector. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 1994; **19**: 43-49
27 **Matsumoto H**, Kimura T, Haga K, Kasahara N, Anton P, McGowan I. Effective in vivo and ex vivo gene transfer to intestinal mucosa by VSV-G-pseudotyped lentiviral vectors. *BMC Gastroenterol* 2010; **10**: 44
28 **Barbara G**, Xing Z, Hogaboam CM, Gauldie J, Collins SM. Interleukin 10 gene transfer prevents experimental colitis in rats. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 344-349
29 **Lindsay JO**, Ciesielski CJ, Scheinin T, Hodgson HJ, Brennan FM. The prevention and treatment of murine colitis using gene therapy with adenoviral vectors encoding IL-10. *J Immunol* 2001; **166**: 7625-7633
30 **Lindsay J**, Van Montfrans C, Brennan F, Van Deventer S, Drillenburg P, Hodgson H, Te Velde A, Sol Rodriguez Pena M. IL-10 gene therapy prevents TNBS-induced colitis. *Gene Ther* 2002; **9**: 1715-1721
31 **Polyak S**, Mah C, Porvasnik S, Herlihy JD, Campbell-Thompson M, Byrne BJ, Valentine JF. Gene delivery to intestinal epithelial cells in vitro and in vivo with recombinant adeno-associated virus types 1, 2 and 5. *Dig Dis Sci* 2008; **53**: 1261-1270
32 **During MJ**, Xu R, Young D, Kaplitt MG, Sherwin RS, Leone P. Peroral gene therapy of lactose intolerance using an adeno-associated virus vector. *Nat Med* 1998; **4**: 1131-1135
33 **O'Neill MJ**, Bourre L, Melgar S, O'Driscoll CM. Intestinal delivery of non-viral gene therapeutics: physiological barriers and preclinical models. *Drug Discov Today* 2011; **16**: 203-218
34 **Blaese RM**, Culver KW, Chang L, Anderson WF, Mullen C, Nienhuis A, Carter C, Dunbar C, Leitman S, Berger M. Treatment of severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID) due to adenosine deaminase deficiency with CD34+ selected autologous peripheral blood cells transduced with a human ADA gene. Amendment to clinical research project, Project 90-C-195, January 10, 1992. *Hum Gene Ther* 1993; **4**: 521-527
35 **Culver KW**, Osborne WR, Miller AD, Fleisher TA, Berger M, Anderson WF, Blaese RM. Correction of ADA deficiency in human T lymphocytes using retroviral-mediated gene transfer. *Transplant Proc* 1991; **23**: 170-171
36 **Anderson WF**, Blaese RM, Culver K. The ADA human gene

therapy clinical protocol: Points to Consider response with clinical protocol, July 6, 1990. *Hum Gene Ther* 1990; **1**: 331-362
37 **Miller DG**, Adam MA, Miller AD. Gene transfer by retrovirus vectors occurs only in cells that are actively replicating at the time of infection. *Mol Cell Biol* 1990; **10**: 4239-4242
38 **Bukrinsky MI**, Haffar OK. HIV-1 nuclear import: in search of a leader. *Front Biosci* 1999; **4**: D772-D781
39 **Zennou V**, Petit C, Guetard D, Nerhbass U, Montagnier L, Charneau P. HIV-1 genome nuclear import is mediated by a central DNA flap. *Cell* 2000; **101**: 173-185
40 **Wu X**, Li Y, Crise B, Burgess SM. **Transcription start regions** in the human genome are favored targets for MLV integration. *Science* 2003; **300**: 1749-1751
41 **Schröder AR**, Shinn P, Chen H, Berry C, Ecker JR, Bushman F. HIV-1 integration in the human genome favors active genes and local hotspots. *Cell* 2002; **110**: 521-529
42 **Fehse B**, Roeder I. Insertional mutagenesis and clonal dominance: biological and statistical considerations. *Gene Ther* 2008; **15**: 143-153
43 **Cavazzana-Calvo M**, Hacein-Bey S, de Saint Basile G, Gross F, Yvon E, Nusbaum P, Selz F, Hue C, Certain S, Casanova JL, Bousso P, Deist FL, Fischer A. Gene therapy of human severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)-X1 disease. *Science* 2000; **288**: 669-672
44 **Marshall E**. Clinical research. Gene therapy a suspect in leukemia-like disease. *Science* 2002; **298**: 34-35
45 **Cartier N**, Hacein-Bey-Abina S, Bartholomae CC, Veres G, Schmidt M, Kutschera I, Vidaud M, Abel U, Dal-Cortivo L, Caccavelli L, Mahlaoui N, Kiermer V, Mittelstaedt D, Bellesme C, Lahlou N, Lefrère F, Blanche S, Audit M, Payen E, Leboulch P, l'Homme B, Bougnères P, Von Kalle C, Fischer A, Cavazzana-Calvo M, Aubourg P. Hematopoietic stem cell gene therapy with a lentiviral vector in X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy. *Science* 2009; **326**: 818-823
46 **Wanisch K**, Yáñez-Muñoz RJ. Integration-deficient lentiviral vectors: a slow coming of age. *Mol Ther* 2009; **17**: 1316-1332
47 **Kay MA**. State-of-the-art gene-based therapies: the road ahead. *Nat Rev Genet* 2011; **12**: 316-328
48 **Gustafson I**, Lindblom A, Yun Z, Omar H, Engstrom L, Lewensohn-Fuchs I, Ljungman P, Broliden K. Quantification of adenovirus DNA in unrelated donor hematopoietic stem cell transplant recipients. *J Clin Virol* 2008; **43**: 79-85
49 **Petrus I**, Chuah M, VandenDriessche T. Gene therapy strategies for hemophilia: benefits versus risks. *J Gene Med* 2010; **12**: 797-809
50 **Schmiedlin-Ren P**, Kesisoglou F, Mapili JA, Sabek SE, Barnett JL, Chey WD, Roessler B, Zimmermann EM. Increased transduction of human intestinal epithelial cells by adenoviral vectors in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2005; **11**: 464-472
51 **Brunetti-Pierri N**, Nichols TC, McCorquodale S, Merricks E, Palmer DJ, Beaudet AL, Ng P. Sustained phenotypic correction of canine hemophilia B after systemic administration of helper-dependent adenoviral vector. *Hum Gene Ther* 2005; **16**: 811-820
52 **McCormack WM**, Seiler MP, Bertin TK, Ubhayakar K, Palmer DJ, Ng P, Nichols TC, Lee B. Helper-dependent adenoviral gene therapy mediates long-term correction of the clotting defect in the canine hemophilia A model. *J Thromb Haemost* 2006; **4**: 1218-1225
53 **Brunetti-Pierri N**, Palmer DJ, Beaudet AL, Carey KD, Finegold M, Ng P. Acute toxicity after high-dose systemic injection of helper-dependent adenoviral vectors into nonhuman primates. *Hum Gene Ther* 2004; **15**: 35-46
54 **Toietta G**, Mane VP, Norona WS, Finegold MJ, Ng P, McDonagh AF, Beaudet AL, Lee B. Lifelong elimination of hyperbilirubinemia in the Gunn rat with a single injection of helper-dependent adenoviral vector. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 3930-3935
55 **Engelhardt JF**. AAV hits the genomic bull's-eye. *Nat Biotechnol* 2006; **24**: 949-950
56 **Schnepp BC**, Clark KR, Klemanski DL, Pacak CA, Johnson PR. Genetic fate of recombinant adeno-associated virus vector genomes in muscle. *J Virol* 2003; **77**: 3495-3504
57 **Monahan PE**, Samulski RJ. Adeno-associated virus vectors for gene therapy: more pros than cons? *Mol Med Today* 2000; **6**: 433-440
58 **Stilwell JL**, Samulski RJ. Adeno-associated virus vectors for therapeutic gene transfer. *Biotechniques* 2003; **34**: 148-**150, 152,** 154 passim
59 **Buff SM**, Yu H, McCall JN, Caldwell SM, Ferkol TW, Flotte TR, Virella-Lowell IL. IL-10 delivery by AAV5 vector attenuates inflammation in mice with Pseudomonas pneumonia. *Gene Ther* 2010; **17**: 567-576
60 **Nomoto T**, Okada T, Shimazaki K, Yoshioka T, Nonaka-Sarukawa M, Ito T, Takeuchi K, Katsura KI, Mizukami H, Kume A, Ookawara S, Ikeda U, Katayama Y, Ozawa K. Systemic delivery of IL-10 by an AAV vector prevents vascular remodeling and end-organ damage in stroke-prone spontaneously hypertensive rat. *Gene Ther* 2009; **16**: 383-391
61 **Mu W**, Ouyang X, Agarwal A, Zhang L, Long DA, Cruz PE, Roncal CA, Glushakova OY, Chiodo VA, Atkinson MA, Hauswirth WW, Flotte TR, Rodriguez-Iturbe B, Johnson RJ. IL-10 suppresses chemokines, inflammation, and fibrosis in a model of chronic renal disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2005; **16**: 3651-3660
62 **Chen B**, Kapturczak MH, Joseph R, George JF, Campbell-Thompson M, Wasserfall CH, Atkinson MA, Tisher CC, Flotte TR, Agarwal A, Chen S. Adeno-associated viral vector-mediated interleukin-10 prolongs allograft survival in a rat kidney transplantation model. *Am J Transplant* 2007; **7**: 1112-1120
63 **Smith JR**, Verwaerde C, Rolling F, Naud MC, Delanoye A, Thillaye-Goldenberg B, Apparailly F, De Kozak Y. Tetracycline-inducible viral interleukin-10 intraocular gene transfer, using adeno-associated virus in experimental autoimmune uveoretinitis. *Hum Gene Ther* 2005; **16**: 1037-1046
64 **Carter JD**, Ellett JD, Chen M, Smith KM, Fialkow LB, McDuffie MJ, Tung KS, Nadler JL, Yang Z. Viral IL-10-mediated immune regulation in pancreatic islet transplantation. *Mol Ther* 2005; **12**: 360-368
65 **Apparailly F**, Millet V, Noël D, Jacquet C, Sany J, Jorgensen C. Tetracycline-inducible interleukin-10 gene transfer mediated by an adeno-associated virus: application to experimental arthritis. *Hum Gene Ther* 2002; **13**: 1179-1188
66 **Yang Z**, Chen M, Wu R, Fialkow LB, Bromberg JS, McDuffie M, Naji A, Nadler JL. Suppression of autoimmune diabetes by viral IL-10 gene transfer. *J Immunol* 2002; **168**: 6479-6485
67 **Kay MA**, Manno CS, Ragni MV, Larson PJ, Couto LB, McClelland A, Glader B, Chew AJ, Tai SJ, Herzog RW, Arruda V, Johnson F, Scallan C, Skarsgard E, Flake AW, High KA. Evidence for gene transfer and expression of factor IX in haemophilia B patients treated with an AAV vector. *Nat Genet* 2000; **24**: 257-261
68 **Manno CS**, Pierce GF, Arruda VR, Glader B, Ragni M, Rasko JJ, Ozelo MC, Hoots K, Blatt P, Konkle B, Dake M, Kaye R, Razavi M, Zajko A, Zehnder J, Rustagi PK, Nakai H, Chew A, Leonard D, Wright JF, Lessard RR, Sommer JM, Tigges M, Sabatino D, Luk A, Jiang H, Mingozzi F, Couto L, Ertl HC, High KA, Kay MA. Successful transduction of liver in hemophilia by AAV-Factor IX and limitations imposed by the host immune response. *Nat Med* 2006; **12**: 342-347
69 **Kaplitt MG**, Feigin A, Tang C, Fitzsimons HL, Mattis P, Lawlor PA, Bland RJ, Young D, Strybing K, Eidelberg D, During MJ. Safety and tolerability of gene therapy with an adeno-associated virus (AAV) borne GAD gene for Parkinson's disease: an open label, phase I trial. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 2097-2105
70 **Bainbridge JW**, Smith AJ, Barker SS, Robbie S, Henderson R, Balaggan K, Viswanathan A, Holder GE, Stockman A, Tyler

N, Petersen-Jones S, Bhattacharya SS, Thrasher AJ, Fitzke FW, Carter BJ, Rubin GS, Moore AT, Ali RR. Effect of gene therapy on visual function in Leber's congenital amaurosis. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 2231-2239

71 **Cideciyan AV**, Aleman TS, Boye SL, Schwartz SB, Kaushal S, Roman AJ, Pang JJ, Sumaroka A, Windsor EA, Wilson JM, Flotte TR, Fishman GA, Heon E, Stone EM, Byrne BJ, Jacobson SG, Hauswirth WW. Human gene therapy for RPE65 isomerase deficiency activates the retinoid cycle of vision but with slow rod kinetics. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 15112-15117

72 **Maguire AM**, Simonelli F, Pierce EA, Pugh EN, Mingozzi F, Bennicelli J, Banfi S, Marshall KA, Testa F, Surace EM, Rossi S, Lyubarsky A, Arruda VR, Konkle B, Stone E, Sun J, Jacobs J, Dell'Osso L, Hertle R, Ma JX, Redmond TM, Zhu X, Hauck B, Zelenaia O, Shindler KS, Maguire MG, Wright JF, Volpe NJ, McDonnell JW, Auricchio A, High KA, Bennett J. Safety and efficacy of gene transfer for Leber's congenital amaurosis. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 2240-2248

73 **Stroes ES**, Nierman MC, Meulenberg JJ, Franssen R, Twisk J, Henny CP, Maas MM, Zwinderman AH, Ross C, Aronica E, High KA, Levi MM, Hayden MR, Kastelein JJ, Kuivenhoven JA. Intramuscular administration of AAV1-lipoprotein lipase S447X lowers triglycerides in lipoprotein lipase-deficient patients. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2008; **28**: 2303-2304

74 **Brantly ML**, Chulay JD, Wang L, Mueller C, Humphries M, Spencer LT, Rouhani F, Conlon TJ, Calcedo R, Betts MR, Spencer C, Byrne BJ, Wilson JM, Flotte TR. Sustained transgene expression despite T lymphocyte responses in a clinical trial of rAAV1-AAT gene therapy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 16363-16368

75 **Jaski BE**, Jessup ML, Mancini DM, Cappola TP, Pauly DF, Greenberg B, Borow K, Dittrich H, Zsebo KM, Hajjar RJ. Calcium upregulation by percutaneous administration of gene therapy in cardiac disease (CUPID Trial), a first-in-human phase 1/2 clinical trial. *J Card Fail* 2009; **15**: 171-181

76 **Maguire AM**, High KA, Auricchio A, Wright JF, Pierce EA, Testa F, Mingozzi F, Bennicelli JL, Ying GS, Rossi S, Fulton A, Marshall KA, Banfi S, Chung DC, Morgan JI, Hauck B, Zelenaia O, Zhu X, Raffini L, Coppieters F, De Baere E, Shindler KS, Volpe NJ, Surace EM, Acerra C, Lyubarsky A, Redmond TM, Stone E, Sun J, McDonnell JW, Leroy BP, Simonelli F, Bennett J. Age-dependent effects of RPE65 gene therapy for Leber's congenital amaurosis: a phase 1 dose-escalation trial. *Lancet* 2009; **374**: 1597-1605

77 **Mendell JR**, Rodino-Klapac LR, Rosales-Quintero X, Kota J, Coley BD, Galloway G, Craenen JM, Lewis S, Malik V, Shilling C, Byrne BJ, Conlon T, Campbell KJ, Bremer WG, Viollet L, Walker CM, Sahenk Z, Clark KR. Limb-girdle muscular dystrophy type 2D gene therapy restores alpha-sarcoglycan and associated proteins. *Ann Neurol* 2009; **66**: 290-297

78 **Hussain MA**, Theise ND. Stem-cell therapy for diabetes mellitus. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 203-205

79 **Duijvestein M**, van den Brink GR, Hommes DW. **Stem cells** as potential novel therapeutic strategy for inflammatory bowel disease. *J Crohns Colitis* 2008; **2**: 99-106

80 **de la Morena MT**, Gatti RA. **A history of bone marrow** transplantation. *Immunol Allergy Clin North Am* 2010; **30**: 1-15

81 **Roncarolo MG**, Gregori S, Battaglia M, Bacchetta R, Fleischhauer K, Levings MK. **Interleukin-10-secreting type 1** regulatory T cells in rodents and humans. *Immunol Rev* 2006; **212**: 28-50

82 **Sakaguchi S**, Miyara M, Costantino CM, Hafler DA. FOXP3+ regulatory T cells in the human immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2010; **10**: 490-500

83 **Hadis U**, Wahl B, Schulz O, Hardtke-Wolenski M, Schippers A, Wagner N, Müller W, Sparwasser T, Förster R, Pabst O. Intestinal tolerance requires gut homing and expansion of FoxP3+ regulatory T cells in the lamina propria. *Immunity* 2011; **34**: 237-246

84 **Wing K**, Sakaguchi S. Regulatory T cells exert checks and balances on self tolerance and autoimmunity. *Nat Immunol* 2010; **11**: 7-13

85 **Amarnath S**, Costanzo CM, Mariotti J, Ullman JL, Telford WG, Kapoor V, Riley JL, Levine BL, June CH, Fong T, Warner NL, Fowler DH. Regulatory T cells and human myeloid dendritic cells promote tolerance via programmed death ligand-1. *PLoS Biol* 2010; **8**: e1000302

86 **Shevach EM**. Mechanisms of foxp3+ T regulatory cell-mediated suppression. *Immunity* 2009; **30**: 636-645

87 **Sakaguchi S**, Yamaguchi T, Nomura T, Ono M. Regulatory T cells and immune tolerance. *Cell* 2008; **133**: 775-787

88 **Masteller EL**, Tang Q, Bluestone JA. **Antigen-specific regu**latory T cells--ex vivo expansion and therapeutic potential. *Semin Immunol* 2006; **18**: 103-110

89 **Jaeckel E**, von Boehmer H, Manns MP. **Antigen-specific** FoxP3-transduced T-cells can control established type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes* 2005; **54**: 306-310

90 **Tang Q**, Henriksen KJ, Bi M, Finger EB, Szot G, Ye J, Masteller EL, McDevitt H, Bonyhadi M, Bluestone JA. In vitro-expanded antigen-specific regulatory T cells suppress autoimmune diabetes. *J Exp Med* 2004; **199**: 1455-1465

91 **Huibregtse IL**, van Lent AU, van Deventer SJ. **Immuno**pathogenesis of IBD: insufficient suppressor function in the gut? *Gut* 2007; **56**: 584-592

92 **Tang Q**, Bluestone JA. The Foxp3+ regulatory T cell: a jack of all trades, master of regulation. *Nat Immunol* 2008; **9**: 239-244

93 **Roncarolo MG**, Battaglia M. Regulatory T-cell immunotherapy for tolerance to self antigens and alloantigens in humans. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2007; **7**: 585-598

94 **Cong Y**, Weaver CT, Lazenby A, Elson CO. Bacterial-reactive T regulatory cells inhibit pathogenic immune responses to the enteric flora. *J Immunol* 2002; **169**: 6112-6119

95 **Groux H**, O'Garra A, Bigler M, Rouleau M, Antonenko S, de Vries JE, Roncarolo MG. A CD4+ T-cell subset inhibits antigen-specific T-cell responses and prevents colitis. *Nature* 1997; **389**: 737-742

96 **Mottet C**, Uhlig HH, Powrie F. Cutting edge: cure of colitis by CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *J Immunol* 2003; **170**: 3939-3943

97 **Li Z**, Arijs I, De Hertogh G, Vermeire S, Noman M, Bullens D, Coorevits L, Sagaert X, Schuit F, Rutgeerts P, Ceuppens JL, Van Assche G. Reciprocal changes of Foxp3 expression in blood and intestinal mucosa in IBD patients responding to infliximab. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2010; **16**: 1299-1310

98 **Veltkamp C**, Anstaett M, Wahl K, Möller S, Gangl S, Bachmann O, Hardtke-Wolenski M, Länger F, Stremmel W, Manns MP, Schulze-Osthoff K, Bantel H. Apoptosis of regulatory T lymphocytes is increased in chronic inflammatory bowel disease and reversed by anti-TNFα treatment. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 1345-1353

99 **Fontenot JD**, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY. Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *Nat Immunol* 2003; **4**: 330-336

100 **Khattri R**, Cox T, Yasayko SA, Ramsdell F. An essential role for Scurfin in CD4+CD25+ T regulatory cells. *Nat Immunol* 2003; **4**: 337-342

101 **Trzonkowski P**, Bieniaszewska M, **Juścińska J, Dobyszuk A,** Krzystyniak A, Marek N, Myśliwska J, Hellmann **A. First**-in-man clinical results of the treatment of patients with graft versus host disease with human ex vivo expanded CD4+CD25+CD127- T regulatory cells. *Clin Immunol* 2009; **133**: 22-26

102 **Beyth S**, Borovsky Z, Mevorach D, Liebergall M, Gazit Z, Aslan H, Galun E, Rachmilewitz J. Human mesenchymal stem cells alter antigen-presenting cell maturation and induce T-cell unresponsiveness. *Blood* 2005; **105**: 2214-2219

103 **Krampera M**, Glennie S, Dyson J, Scott D, Laylor R, Simpson E, Dazzi F. Bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells inhibit the response of naive and memory antigen-specific T cells to

their cognate peptide. *Blood* 2003; **101**: 3722-3729
104 **Aggarwal S**, Pittenger MF. Human mesenchymal stem cells modulate allogeneic immune cell responses. *Blood* 2005; **105**: 1815-1822
105 **Di Nicola M**, Carlo-Stella C, Magni M, Milanesi M, Longoni PD, Matteucci P, Grisanti S, Gianni AM. Human bone marrow stromal cells suppress T-lymphocyte proliferation induced by cellular or nonspecific mitogenic stimuli. *Blood* 2002; **99**: 3838-3843
106 **Sundin M**, D'arcy P, Johansson CC, Barrett AJ, Lönnies H, Sundberg B, Nava S, Kiessling R, Mougiakakos D, Le Blanc K. Multipotent mesenchymal stromal cells express FoxP3: a marker for the immunosuppressive capacity? *J Immunother* 2011; **34**: 336-342
107 **Zuk PA**, Zhu M, Ashjian P, De Ugarte DA, Huang JI, Mizuno H, Alfonso ZC, Fraser JK, Benhaim P, Hedrick MH. Human adipose tissue is a source of multipotent stem cells. *Mol Biol Cell* 2002; **13**: 4279-4295
108 **Tondreau T**, Meuleman N, Delforge A, Dejeneffe M, Leroy R, Massy M, Mortier C, Bron D, Lagneaux L. Mesenchymal stem cells derived from CD133-positive cells in mobilized peripheral blood and cord blood: proliferation, Oct4 expression, and plasticity. *Stem Cells* 2005; **23**: 1105-1112
109 **Erices A**, Conget P, Minguell JJ. Mesenchymal progenitor cells in human umbilical cord blood. *Br J Haematol* 2000; **109**: 235-242
110 **Gonzalez-Rey E**, Anderson P, González MA, Rico L, Büscher D, Delgado M. Human adult stem cells derived from adipose tissue protect against experimental colitis and sepsis. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 929-939
111 **González MA**, Gonzalez-Rey E, Rico L, Büscher D, Delgado M. Adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells alleviate experimental colitis by inhibiting inflammatory and autoimmune responses. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 978-989
112 **June CH**, Blazar BR, Riley JL. Engineering lymphocyte subsets: tools, trials and tribulations. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2009; **9**: 704-716
113 **Van Montfrans C**, Rodriguez Pena MS, Pronk I, Ten Kate FJ, Te Velde AA, Van Deventer SJ. Prevention of colitis by interleukin 10-transduced T lymphocytes in the SCID mice transfer model. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1865-1876
114 **Van Montfrans C**, Hooijberg E, Rodriguez Pena MS, De Jong EC, Spits H, Te Velde AA, Van Deventer SJ. Generation of regulatory gut-homing human T lymphocytes using ex vivo interleukin 10 gene transfer. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 1877-1888
115 **Hori S**, Nomura T, Sakaguchi S. Control of regulatory T cell development by the transcription factor Foxp3. *Science* 2003; **299**: 1057-1061
116 **Elinav E**, Adam N, Waks T, Eshhar Z. Amelioration of colitis by genetically engineered murine regulatory T cells redirected by antigen-specific chimeric receptor. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: 1721-1731
117 **Chai JG**, Xue SA, Coe D, Addey C, Bartok I, Scott D, Simpson E, Stauss HJ, Hori S, Sakaguchi S, Dyson J. Regulatory T cells, derived from naïve CD4+CD25- T cells by in vitro Foxp3 gene transfer, can induce transplantation tolerance. *Transplantation* 2005; **79**: 1310-1316
118 **Peng J**, Dicker B, Du W, Tang F, Nguyen P, Geiger T, Wong FS, Wen L. Converting antigen-specific diabetogenic CD4 and CD8 T cells to TGF-beta producing non-pathogenic regulatory cells following FoxP3 transduction. *J Autoimmun* 2007; **28**: 188-200
119 **Sandberg JW**, Lau C, Jacomino M, Finegold M, Henning SJ. Improving access to intestinal stem cells as a step toward intestinal gene transfer. *Hum Gene Ther* 1994; **5**: 323-329
120 **Crispe IN**. The liver as a lymphoid organ. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2009; **27**: 147-163
121 **Kotin RM**. Prospects for the use of adeno-associated virus as a vector for human gene therapy. *Hum Gene Ther* 1994; **5**: 793-801
122 **Mitchell AM**, Nicolson SC, Warischalk JK, Samulski RJ. AAV's anatomy: roadmap for optimizing vectors for translational success. *Curr Gene Ther* 2010; **10**: 319-340
123 **Cohen J**. How DNA shuffling works. *Science* 2001; **293**: 237
124 **Li W**, Asokan A, Wu Z, Van Dyke T, DiPrimio N, Johnson JS, Govindaswamy L, Agbandje-McKenna M, Leichtle S, Redmond DE, McCown TJ, Petermann KB, Sharpless NE, Samulski RJ. Engineering and selection of shuffled AAV genomes: a new strategy for producing targeted biological nanoparticles. *Mol Ther* 2008; **16**: 1252-1260
125 **Horowitz ED**, Weinberg MS, Asokan A. Glycated AAV vectors: chemical redirection of viral tissue tropism. *Bioconjug Chem* 2011; **22**: 529-532
126 **Barker N**, van de Wetering M, Clevers H. The intestinal stem cell. *Genes Dev* 2008; **22**: 1856-1864
127 **Kawaguchi AL**, Dunn JC, Fonkalsrud EW. In vivo growth of transplanted genetically altered intestinal stem cells. *J Pediatr Surg* 1998; **33**: 559-563
128 **Glocker EO**, Kotlarz D, Boztug K, Gertz EM, Schäffer AA, Noyan F, Perro M, Diestelhorst J, Allroth A, Murugan D, Hätscher N, Pfeifer D, Sykora KW, Sauer M, Kreipe H, Lacher M, Nustede R, Woellner C, Baumann U, Salzer U, Koletzko S, Shah N, Segal AW, Sauerbrey A, Buderus S, Snapper SB, Grimbacher B, Klein C. Inflammatory bowel disease and mutations affecting the interleukin-10 receptor. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 2033-2045
129 **Johnstone CN**, White SJ, Tebbutt NC, Clay FJ, Ernst M, Biggs WH, Viars CS, Czekay S, Arden KC, Heath JK. Analysis of the regulation of the A33 antigen gene reveals intestine-specific mechanisms of gene expression. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 34531-34539
130 **Madison BB**, Dunbar L, Qiao XT, Braunstein K, Braunstein E, Gumucio DL. Cis elements of the villin gene control expression in restricted domains of the vertical (crypt) and horizontal (duodenum, cecum) axes of the intestine. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 33275-33283
131 **Mayer K**, Iolyeva ME, Meyer-Grahle U, Brix K. Intestine-specific expression of green fluorescent protein-tagged cathepsin B: proof-of-principle experiments. *Biol Chem* 2008; **389**: 1085-1096
132 **Feng G**, Nadig SN, Bäckdahl L, Beck S, Francis RS, Schiopu A, Whatcott A, Wood KJ, Bushell A. Functional regulatory T cells produced by inhibiting cyclic nucleotide phosphodiesterase type 3 prevent allograft rejection. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 83ra40
133 **Hippen KL**, Merkel SC, Schirm DK, Sieben CM, Sumstad D, Kadidlo DM, McKenna DH, Bromberg JS, Levine BL, Riley JL, June CH, Scheinberg P, Douek DC, Miller JS, Wagner JE, Blazar BR. Massive ex vivo expansion of human natural regulatory T cells (T(regs)) with minimal loss of in vivo functional activity. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 83ra41
134 **Sagoo P**, Ali N, Garg G, Nestle FO, Lechler RI, Lombardi G. Human regulatory T cells with alloantigen specificity are more potent inhibitors of alloimmune skin graft damage than polyclonal regulatory T cells. *Sci Transl Med* 2011; **3**: 83ra42
135 **Roncarolo MG**, Bacchetta R, Bordignon C, Narula S, Levings MK. Type 1 T regulatory cells. *Immunol Rev* 2001; **182**: 68-79

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Hughes D **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.123

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 123-137
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

REVIEW

Enterocytes' tight junctions: From molecules to diseases

Stelios F Assimakopoulos, Ismini Papageorgiou, Aristidis Charonis

Stelios F Assimakopoulos, Department of Internal Medicine, University Hospital of Patras, Patras 26504, Greece
Ismini Papageorgiou, Institute of Physiology and Pathophysiology, Ruprecht-Karls University of Heidelberg, 69120 Heidelberg, Germany
Aristidis Charonis, Biomedical Research Foundation of the Academy of Athens, Athens 11527, Greece
Author contributions: Assimakopoulos SF and Papageorgiou I wrote this review; Charonis A critically reviewed the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Stelios F Assimakopoulos, MD, PhD, Department of Internal Medicine, University Hospital of Patras, Patras 26504, Greece. sassim@upatras.gr
Telephone: +30-2610-999583 Fax: +30-2610-999582
Received: July 7, 2011 Revised: August 26, 2011
Accepted: October 31, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

Tight junctions (TJs) are structures between cells where cells appear in the closest possible contact. They are responsible for sealing compartments when epithelial sheets are generated. They regulate the permeability of ions, (macro) molecules and cells *via* the paracellular pathway. Their structure at the electron microscopic level has been well known since the 1970s; however, only recently has their macromolecular composition been revealed. This review first examines the major macromolecular components of the TJs (occludin, claudins, junctional adhesion molecule and tricellulin) and then the associated macromolecules at the intracellular plaque [zonula occludens (ZO)-1, ZO-2, ZO-3, AF-6, cingulin, 7H6]. Emphasis is given to their interactions in order to begin to understand the mode of assembly of TJs. The functional significance of TJs is detailed and several mechanisms and factors involved are discussed briefly. Emphasis is given to the role of intestinal TJs and the alterations observed or speculated in diverse disease states. Specifically, intestinal TJs may exert a pathogenetic role in intestinal (inflammatory bowel disease, celiac disease) and extraintestinal diseases (diabetes type 1, food allergies, autoimmune diseases). Additionally, intestinal TJs may be secondarily disrupted during the course of diverse diseases, subsequently allowing the bacterial translocation phenomenon and promoting the systemic inflammatory response, which is often associated with clinical deterioration. The major questions in the field are highlighted.

Key words: Tight junctions; Occludin; Claudins; Junctional adhesion molecule; Tricellulin; Intestinal permeability

Peer reviewers: Yan-Fang Guan, Dr., Easton Hospital, PA, 250 South 21st Street, Easton, MA 18042, United States; Jean-Francois Beaulieu, Professor, Department of Anatomy and Cell Biology, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Qué J1H 5N4, Canada

Assimakopoulos SF, Papageorgiou I, Charonis A. Enterocytes' tight junctions: From molecules to diseases. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 123-137 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/123.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.123

INTRODUCTION

The direct observation of how close cells can be came with the use of the transmission electron microscope. Cell biologists of the 1950s and 1960s observed several structures that seemed to bring the cells into close contact and connect with each other, and gave to these junctions several names, descriptive of either the structure or the function served by the structure. Thus, the names of occluding junctions [or tight junctions (TJs)], anchoring junctions (or adherens junctions) and communicating junctions (or gap junctions) were coined.

TJs are the key elements for creating two different barriers: the first barrier is between the apical and basolateral cell membrane (lipid bilayer) compartment, thus keeping the protein and lipid composition of these two membrane domains qualitatively different by restricting

their exchange. The second barrier is between the apical and basal compartment defined by the epithelium in which the TJ is present, thus restricting the passage of water, solutes and cells from the "outer" to the "inner" compartment and vice versa, also known as paracellular pathway.

TJs were seen in the most apical part of the lateral cell membrane of polarized cells, forming continuous circumferential contacts. What morphologists observed with the use of transmission electron microscopy was an obliteration of the extracellular space between cells at certain points; the morphological data led them to suggest that there are points of the closest possible apposition between the cell membranes of cells involved. The use of freeze-fracture techniques added important new information by showing these "contact points' as fibrillar rows of intramembrane particles, forming a branching network around the cell. The chemical composition of these particles became a subject of intense investigation. It was originally proposed that these particles are composed solely of lipids[1]. Starting from the early 1990s, proteins localized at and involved in the formation of TJs have been identified. The first member of this family, occludin, is described in the report by Furuse *et al*[2] in 1993 and since then the field has witnessed a wealth of new information, which will be briefly reviewed in this report.

MACROMOLECULAR COMPOSITION OF TJs

To date, four groups of macromolecules are considered as bona fide integral components of the TJ: occludin(s), claudins, junctional adhesion molecule (JAM) and tricellulin. It is remarkable that the members of the first two groups cross the cell membrane four times, thus creating two extracellular loops and three intracellular domains, including the amino terminal domain, the carboxy terminal domain and the very short loop-connecting segment. In contrast, JAM crosses the cell membrane only once (Figures 1-3). Recently, tricellulin was identified as another integral TJ protein, quite homologous to occludin, with 4 transmembrane domains, preferentially localized at the tight junctional strands of tricellular contacts of epithelial cells.

Occludin

The name comes from the Latin verb "occludere", which means to restrict passage. It was first isolated by Furuse *et al*[2] in 1993 in cultures of chicken liver cells, based on the results of intensive screening of monoclonal antibodies. It is a component of TJs, highly conserved among species and without tissue specific isoforms (recently only one occludin isoforms resulting from alternative splicing has been reported)[3]. Occludin is only expressed under normal conditions in cells that form TJs. When cells that do not form TJs are led *via* transfection to express occludin, it is concentrated at cell contact sites, forming only a small number of short strands identified in freeze-fracture replicas[4]. However, when occludin was cotransfected with claudin-1, tight junctional fibrils were formed[4]. In addition, immunoreplica electron microscopy has documented the presence of occludin in tight junctional strands[5].

Occludin (Figure 1) consists of 504 amino acids. The amino terminal portion is intracellular and contains 57 amino acids. This portion contains a WW domain (PPYP), which is motif participating in the interaction with other signaling and regulatory proteins[6]. The four transmembrane domains consist of 21-24 amino acid residues, mostly hydrophobic. The two extracellular loops are 43 amino acids long each and the intravellular loop is 10 amino acids long. Both extracellular loops are rich in tyrosine and glycine (in the range of 20%-30%); however, the functional significance of this is not known yet[2]. The very long intracellular carboxyl terminal part (50% of the sequence) has several sites of potential interaction with other macromolecules and phosphorylation sites[2,7]. It is a highly hydrophilic sequence, containing stretches of charged amino acids, like EEEEE (aa 347-351) and RRGRRRRR (aa 363-370).

The electrophoretic mobility of occludin in polyacrylamide gels has revealed a wide range of bands from 62kDa to 82 kDa. This difference in mobility has been assigned to post-translational modifications and more precisely to differential phosphorylation on both tyrosine and serine/threonine residues. It has been proposed that the site and the degree of phosphorylation of occludin are important parameters in defining the localization and the function of the molecule. For example, highly phosphorylated occludin, especially in serine/threonine residues, is detected mainly in the junctional area and correlates with restricted transcellular permeability. On the contrary, non-phosphorylated occludin is detected intracellularly, in the vesicular compartment, and is considered to contribute less to transcellular permeability, being a pool of macromolecules easily subjected to regulatory stimuli. As mentioned above, the site of phosphorylation is also important. It has been suggested that high degree of phosphorylation at tyrosine residues correlates with loss of function and higher transcellular permeability.

Recently, a novel alternatively spliced form of occludin has been described[3], in which 56 amino acids are present close to the amino terminal of the molecule. This new form termed occludin 1B has been detected in TJs and widely co-expressed with the known occludin.

Claudins

The name claudin comes from the Latin verb "claudere", which means "to close". Claudins, identified after occludin, are transmembrane proteins extremely crucial for TJ formation. The existence of another TJ component, in addition to occludin, was suspected when Saitou *et al*[8] created an occludin deficient cell line that was surprisingly able to form TJ strands. These TJs appeared structurally normal, but this finding should not underestimate the role of occludin since a later studied model of occludin defi-

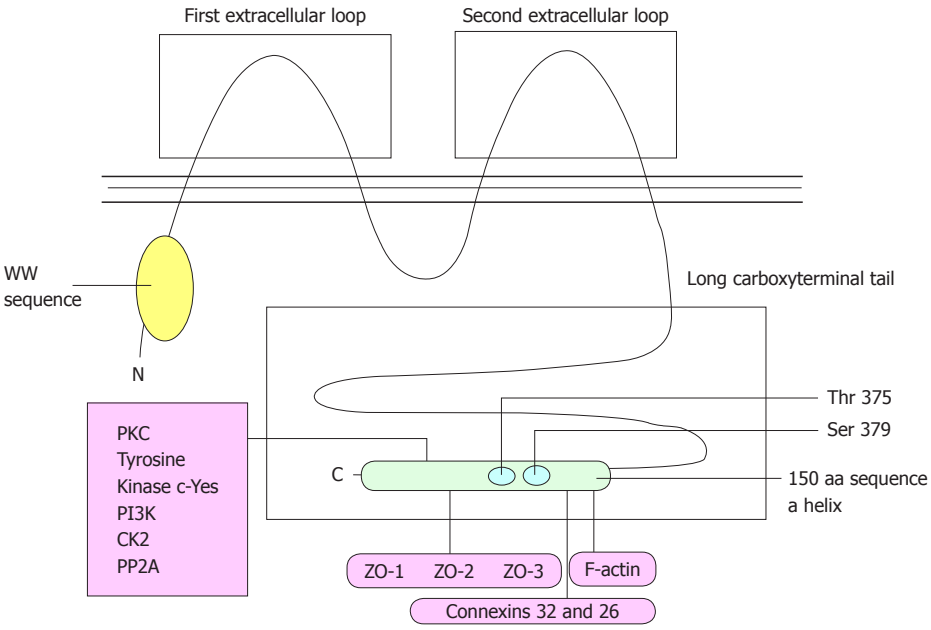


Figure 1 Occludin. WW sequences are highly preserved 35-45 aminoacid segments, containing Trp and Pro. They recognize proline rich domains. Ser 379 and Thr 375 are casein kinase 2 (CK2) phosphorylation sites. PKC: Protein kinase C; PI3K: Phosphatidylinositol 3 kinase; PP2A: Protein phosphatase 2A; ZO: Zonula occludens.

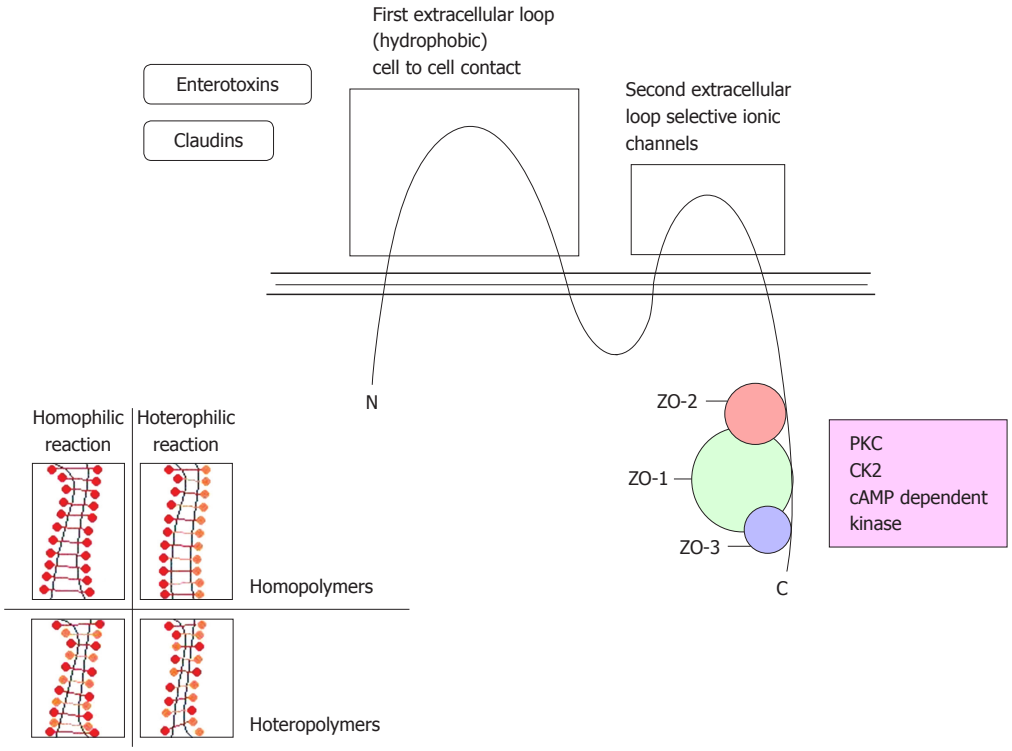


Figure 2 Claudin(s). PKC: Protein kinase C; CK2: Casein kinase 2; ZO: Zonula occludens.

cient mice[9] presented abnormalities from several tissues e.g., chronic inflammation and hyperplasia of the gastric epithelium, calcification in the brain, testicular atrophy, thinning of the compact bone and loss of cytoplasmic granules in striated duct cells of the salivary glands.

Furuse *et al*[10] identified the first two members of the claudin superfamily, claudins 1 and 2. Comparing their sequence to already known proteins, they found similarity to at least three membrane-associated proteins: rat ventral prostate-1, clostridium perfringens enterotoxin receptor and oligodendrocyte specific protein[11]. Up until now, the claudin family consists of 24 members in humans[12,13] (Table 1).

Claudins are transmembrane proteins with MW rang-

Table 1 Distinctive characteristics of claudins

Claudin	Distinctive characteristics
1	Present in high resistance epithelia (collecting segment), absent in leaky epithelia (proximal tubule)
	Crucial for the mammalian epidermal barrier
	Mutations cause neonatal sclerosing cholangitis
	Prognostic value in colon and thyroid cancer
2	Present in leaky epithelia (proximal tubule) and absent in tight epithelia
	Present in the choroids plexus epithelium
3	Present in the tighter segments of the nephron
	Up-regulated in ovarian, breast, prostate and pancreatic tumors
4	Induces selective decrease in sodium permeability
	Present in the tighter segments of the nephron
	Alternative name: CPE-R
	Up-regulated in ovarian, breast, prostate and pancreatic tumors
5	Frequently deleted in velo cardio facial syndrome
	Constitutes TJ strands in endothelial cells and it is transiently expressed during the development of retinal pigment epithelium
6	Present in embryonic epithelia
	Its overexpression in transgenic mice generates a defective epidermal permeability barrier
7	Down regulated in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas
	Upregulated in stomach cancer
8	Present in the tighter segments of the nephron
10	Prognostic value in hepatocellular carcinoma (recurrence)
11	Present in oligodendrocytes and sertoli cells; also named OSP
14	Expressed in the sensory epithelium of the organ of Corti Mutations cause autosomal recessive deafness
15	Present in endothelial cells
16	Critical for Mg^{2+} and Ca^{2+} resorption in the human thick ascending limb of Henle
	Mutations cause familial hypomagnesaemia
18	Expressed in the lung and stomach

Claudins 9, 12, 13, 17, 19-24: Insufficient data. CPE-R: Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin receptor; OSP: Oligodendrocyte sertoli protein.

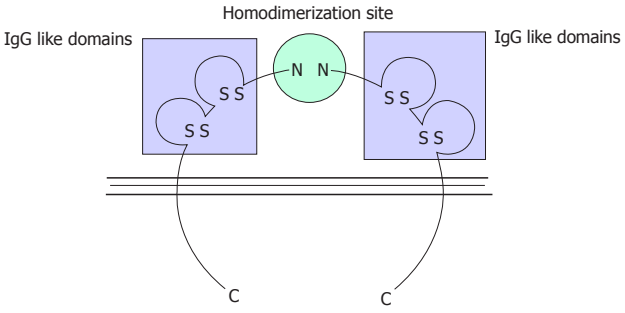


Figure 3 Junctional adhesion molecule.

ing from 20 kDa to 27 kDa. They possess an intracellular amino-terminus, four transmembrane segments that form two extracellular and an intracellular loop, and a short carboxyterminal intramembrane tail (Figure 2)[14]. The first and fourth transmembrane part, as well as the first and second extracellular loops are highly conserved, whereas the COOH tail has the greatest variability among members of the claudin family[11]. The first extracellular loop is longer and more hydrophobic than the second one[11,14]; therefore it is possibly responsible for cell-to-cell contact. The second extracellular loop contains many charged residues, which regulate the affinity to ions[14] and possibly forms ion-selective paracellular channels. The carboxyterminal tail contains many phosphorylation sites, related to protein kinase C (PKC), casein kinase 2 (CK2) and a cAMP dependent kinase. Almost every claudin has a carboxyterminal Tyr-Val sequence, which acts as a PDZ-domain interacting motif. Exceptions are claudins 16, 11, 12 and 13. When claudins 1 and 2 were transfected in TJs, negative cells[4] induced cell-to-cell adhesion by forming TJ strands with no obvious structural and functional difference from their occludin positive homologues. At present, claudins are supposed to be the "backbone" of the TJ barrier[14-16].

TJs *in vivo* usually express 2 claudins[15] with two notable exceptions, the oligodendrocytes and the Sertoli cells, both expressing a single claudin, claudin-11[11]. Claudins are also characterized by a differential tissue expression pattern[15,17] and a developmental selectivity. Interestingly, nephron expresses different claudins in different segments and this variability may be the basis for differential epithelial permeability in these segments[18-20]: claudins 5 and 15 are expressed at endothelial cells, 2, 10 and 11 at the proximal tubule segment, 1, 3 and 8 at the distal tubule and 1, 3, 4 and 8 at the collecting duct segment. As proved by Turksen *et al*[21,22] and Reyes *et al*[18], the expression of claudins in murine nephron changes during development. Hellani *et al*[23], who studied the expression of claudin 11 on Sertoli cells, also verified the above observations.

The complexity at the expression of different claudins in different tissues, in different stages of their development and to more than one combination, suggests that these molecules participate in both homophilic and heterophilic interactions within the same cell or between opposing cell membranes[24]. The possible combination models that claudins follow to their polymerization are

presented in Figure 2. At the level of electron microscopy, claudins form different strand patterns, related to the P face or the E face of the cytoplasmic membrane. Claudins 1, 3 and 11 form P face strands, whereas claudins 2 and 5 are related to the E face strand pattern[15,24-26].

Claudins form a transmembrane and transcellular net that serves paracellular permeability, epithelial polarization and conservation of the transepithelial resistance (TER)[11,14,16], as well as selective permeation of charged molecules and ions[27,28]. These parameters vary among different tissues according to their claudin expression, as long as claudins are the only known variable elements in TJs[11].

Finally, some members of the claudin family are receptors for extracellular ligands, such as Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin, that bind directly to claudins-4 (high affinity) and -3 (low affinity)[29-31].

JAM

JAM was first described in 1998 by Martìn-Padura *et al*[32]. It is a type I transmembrane protein of MW 43 kDa, belongs to the immunoglobulin superfamily (Figure 3) and is localized in close proximity to the TJs of epithelial and endothelial sheets.

When JAM is expressed in cells that do not form TJs under physiological conditions, tight junctional strands are not observed, as is the case with occludin and claudins[33]. In this case, JAM molecules are accumulated only when cell-cell contact is established and both cells express JAM[32], suggesting a specific polymerization pattern by homophilic interactions. It appears that JAM plays a role in the process of formation of TJs, since antibodies against JAM do not disrupt already formed TJs[34].

Structurally, JAM consists of an extracellular amino terminal segment, a transmembrane domain and an intracellular carboxy terminal segment[32]. The extracellular part consists of 215 amino acids and contains two variable (V) type IgG domains. The V-V arrangement is novel between Ig domains and differentiates JAM-subfamily from other subfamilies of the Ig superfamily[32]. The intracellular part consists of 45 amino acids, where motifs appropriate for interactions with occludin[32] as well as other TJ associated macromolecules exist. The recently revealed X-ray structure of JAM suggests that first a U-shaped homodimer is formed and several homodimers interact and form an extensive network[35].

JAMs are subdivided based on the expression of type Ⅰ or Ⅱ PDZ-binding motifs in the intracellular C-terminus, which suggests that the 2 types interact with unique scaffolding and cytoplasmic proteins. JAM-A, JAM-B, and JAM-C (or JAM-1, JAM-2, and JAM-3) have type Ⅱ binding motifs, whereas the atypical JAMs, including JAM-4, Coxsackie and adenovirus receptor and endothelial selective adhesion molecule, contain type Ⅰ PDZ-binding domains[36].

It has been proposed that JAM may contribute to free diffusion of proteins within the lipid bilayer but more importantly to the restriction of cellular passage (leukocytes, monocytes, lymphocytes, *etc*.) through TJs between endothelial cells[14,32,35,37].

Tricellulin

A recent addition to the list of TJ proteins is tricellulin. Structurally it is quite homologous to occludin, with 555 amino acids forming 4 transmembrane domains; both the amino and the carboxy termini are intracellular, forming two extracellular loops. It is localized at the tight junctional strands of tricellular contacts of epithelial cells[38]. It participates in epithelial barrier organization. It was recently found that recessive mutations in the tricellulin gene cause nonsyndromic deafness and that tricellulin participates in the junctions in cochlear and vestibular epithelial cells[39]. Recent studies indicate that tricellulin is also localized in special TJs of myelinating Schwann cells[40]. Tricellulin has also been proposed to play an inhibitory role in the process of epithelial to mesenchymal transition of gastric carcinoma cells[41].

MACROMOLECULAR COMPONENTS ASSOCIATED WITH TJs

Several macromolecules are concentrated underneath the TJs and constitute the "tight junctional plaque". In general, their function is to promote interactions between them and the bona fide TJ macromolecules described above. These interactions can be mediated through: (1) PDZ motifs, that are present in several copies in most of the proteins of the tight junctional plaque; these motifs are usually 80-90 amino acids long and associate with certain protein motifs (e.g., S/TXV). Their presence in high numbers allows multiple and complicated interactions, leading to clustering and anchoring of transmembrane proteins[42]; (2) SH3 motifs, usually 50-70 amino acids long and frequently used as docking sites for several intracellular proteins; and (3) guanylate kinase (GK) motifs that are considered to be enzymatically inactive but could activate signaling pathways[43]. The proteins that contain them are collectively termed MAGUK proteins (Membrane-associated GK proteins). These proteins are beyond the scope of the present review so they will only be briefly mentioned, with emphasis on their interactions.

Zonula occludens-1

Zonula occludens-1 (ZO-1) is a 210-225 kDa phosphoprotein that interacts with occludin[44], claudins[45] and JAM[46] and also ZO-2[47], ZO-3[47], AF-6[46], cingulin[48] and the actin cytoskeleton[44]. Therefore, it plays a key role in bringing several components together and in connecting tight junctional proteins to the cytoskeleton. Cells that do not form TJs contain ZO-1 either dispersed in the cytoplasm or concentrated in cadherin-enriched adherens junctions[49] (Table 2).

ZO-2

ZO-2 is a 160 kDa protein present in two different isoforms. Table 3 shows the relationships of ZO-2 to other TJ molecules and cytosceleton fibers[14]. ZO-2 reacts with the splicing factor SC35[50] and with the transcription fac-

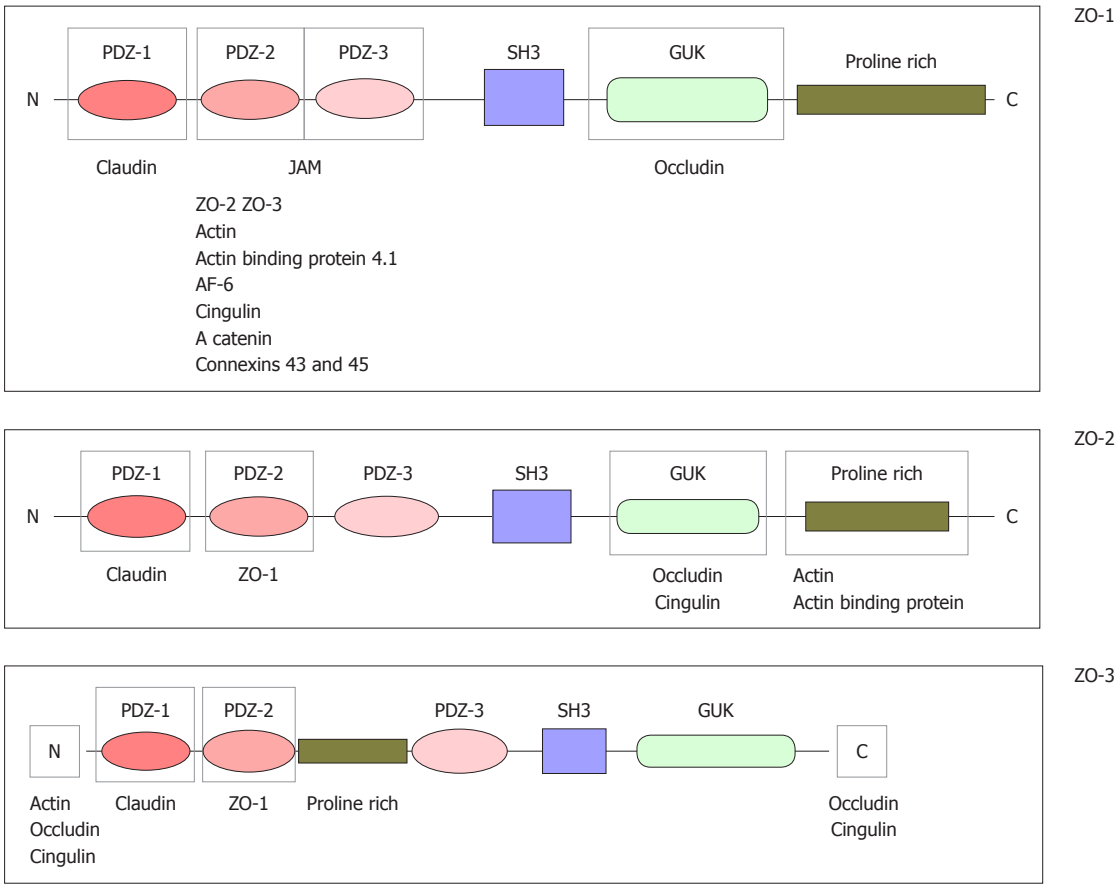


Figure 4 Zonula occludens. JAM: Junctional adhesion molecule; ZO: Zonula occludens.

Table 2 Interaction between zonula occludens-1 and other macromolecules

ZO-1 protein domain	Interacting molecules
1st PDZ	C terminus of claudin
2nd/3rd PDZ	JAM
GUK	Occludin
	CAR
2nd PDZ	ZO-2s and ZO-3s 2nd PDZ
	Actin cytoskeleton
	Actin binding protein 4.1
	AF-6
	Cingulin
	A catenin
	Connexins 43 and 45

ZO: Zonula occludens; CAR: Coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor; JAM: Junction adhesion molecule.

tors Fos, Jun and C/EBP[51].

ZO-3

ZO-3 is a 130 kDa that differs from the other two members of ZO group in that it lacks the long carboxy-tail (Table 4). According to the model of Wittchen *et al*[47], ZO-1 binds to ZO-2 and ZO-3; however, there is no direct interaction between ZO-2 and ZO-3 (Figure 4).

Table 3 Interaction between zonula occludens-2 and other macromolecules

ZO-2 binding area	Interacting molecule
1st PDZ	Claudin
2nd PDZ	ZO-1
GUK	Occludin
	Cingulin
C terminal proline rich domain	Actin
	Actin binding protein 4.1

ZO: Zonula occludens.

AF-6/Afadin

AF-6/Afadin is a 205 kDa protein that seems to be more important for TJ formation and development than for TJ stabilization[14]. It is expressed in both TJ and AJ, and it seems to correlate with: (1) ZO-1 and activated Ras protein have antagonistic effect for the same binding site[52]; (2) JAM; and (3) F actin. AF-6 also interacts with cingulin[48]. Afadin expresses a 190 kDa splicing variant[53], found at the postsynaptic densities of neuronal tissues.

Cingulin

Cingulin is named after the Latin word "cingere", to encircle. It is a 140-160 kDa protein. It is characterized

Table 4 Interaction between zonula occludens-3 and other macromolecules

ZO-3 binding sites	Interacting molecules	
1st PDZ domain	Claudins	
2nd PDZ domain	ZO-1	
N terminus	Actin	Occludin
C terminus (class I PDZ binding motif TDL)	6th PDZ domain PATJ	Cingulin
	Connexin 45	

ZO: Zonula occludens.

by a globular N terminal head, a central α-helical coiled-coil domain and a C terminal tail. Through its central rods, dimmers are formed that interact with ZO-1, ZO-2, ZO-3, JAM, F actin and myosin. The majority of these interactions are supported by its globular head[14]. Cingulin is a serine phosphorylated protein, independent from PKC[54].

7H6 antigen

One hundred and fifty five kilodaltons protein that belongs to a family of proteins with alpha helical coiled coil domain and an ATPase domain. It sustains phosphorylation and its phosphorylated form is detected at TJ areas, whereas the non-phosphorylated form dissociates form TJs[14].

ASSEMBLY OF TJs

During embryogenesis and formation of epithelial sheets, it appears that primordial "spot-junctions" are formed. These are found in protrusions of neighboring cells and consist of cadherin, nectin, AF-6 and ZO-1[55,56]. At a later stage, cadherin and nectin are removed from those spots destined to become TJs, while occludin and claudins are recruited[57]. AF-6 remains in TJs of endothelial sheets but is removed from mature epithelial sheets and JAM is detected only in its presence in the tight junctional area[46], strongly suggesting a co-operative role of JAM and AF-6 related to specific cellular transmigration.

The interactions between the macromolecules described above obviously play an important role in the assembly process. Although several facts of the assembly process are not known yet, one can highlight observations that are the first important clues we have for understanding this process. Phosphorylation and dephosphorylation of occludin is a crucial post-translational modification since it has been connected with assignment of occludin to different subcellular compartments. Kinases and phosphatases involved are expected to be major players in the assembly-disassembly process. The intracellular domain of occludin is key to these events, since it contains several motifs that allow binding to the other macromolecules (see above). The last 150 amino acids close to the carboxyl terminal are very highly conserved among species and it is believed that they contain the self-association domain, critical for fibril formation.

Freeze-fracture immunostaining data suggest that usually two different types of claudins are present in tight junctional strands. This finding suggests that specific areas belonging to the short intracellular domains of claudins are responsible for crucial interactions between claudins and between one claudin and one occludin molecule. Although the molecular basis for these interactions is not known yet, it is certain that they will prove of great importance in understanding how the differential distribution of claudins in tissues leads to the great variety of electrical resistance and permeability observed among epithelial and endothelial sheets.

Another important aspect for our understanding of TJ assembly and functionality is the precise nature of the associations between extracellular loops of occludin and claudins. The length of each loop, similar in occludin and very different in claudins and the specific amino acid composition, mentioned above, are likely to be major factors in the formation of the barrier (Figure 5).

FUNCTIONAL SIGNIFICANCE OF TJs-REGULATORY MECHANISMS

TJs are crucial structures for the establishment and the stability of epithelial barriers. They mediate cell to cell adhesion, thus creating a mechanical and charged fence for selective permeability of macromolecules and ions. Ionic permeability is expressed through the parameter of TER. Macromolecular and ionic permeability seems to be quite independent, as they sustain controversial remodeling under the same conditions[58].

More than a simple paracellular fence, the transmembrane component of TJs blocks the circulation of proteins and lipids between the apical and basolateral membrane, mediating membrane polarization. Finally, the intracellular component triggers a variety of signaling pathways and communicates with the nucleus, acting as a "sensor" for extracellular events.

TJ transmembrane and intracellular proteins interact to cytoskeletal elements and undergo various types of phosphorylation. They also regulate protein expression, participating in vesicle trafficking. Pit and Rab proteins are the intracellular proteins that mediate such a function[14]. Finally, TJs interact with the actin cytoskeleton, and directly or indirectly are related to other membrane structures and macromolecules, like adherens junctions[14,16], gap junctions and proteoglycans[14].

The extracellular part of the TJs, consisting of the extracellular part of transmembrane proteins, acts as a multidynamic ligand for both homophilic and heterophilic interactions. It interacts with other cells participating with homodimers (occludin) and homopolymers (JAM) of heteropolymers (claudins). Additionally, free antigens from the extracellular space are ligands for extracellular TJ domains. Between these antigens are bacterial toxins, whose role in the pathogenetic mechanisms is discussed below.

TJs are in a dynamic balance, regulated both from intracellular and extracellular events. Intracellular events

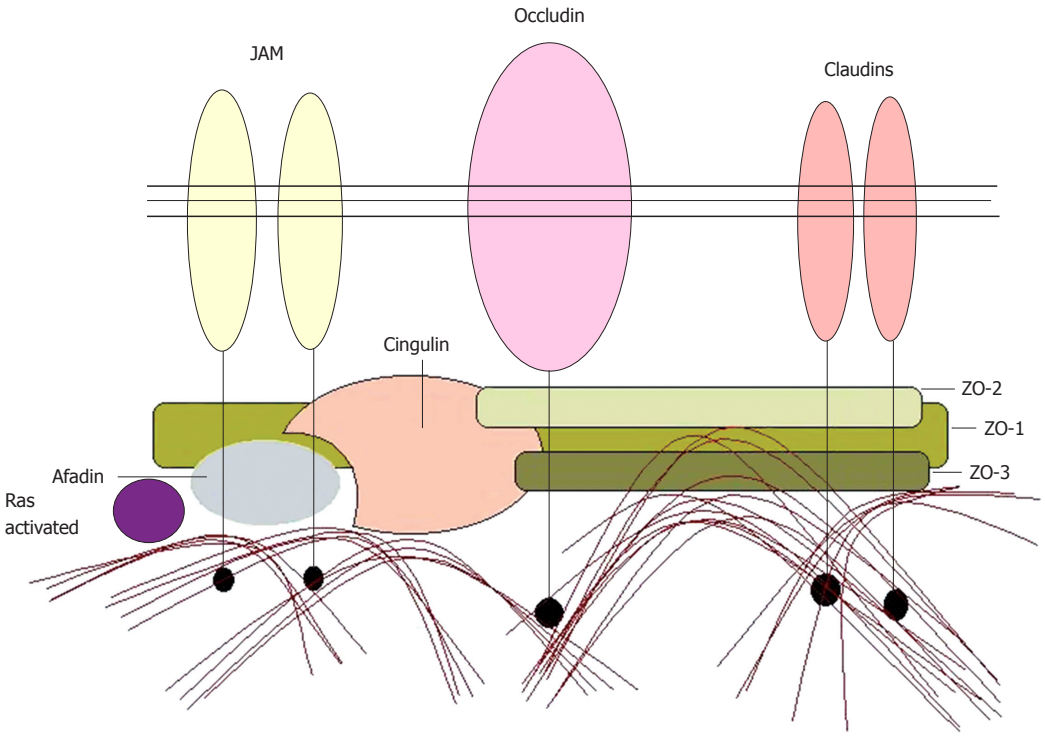


Figure 5 Assembly of tight junction proteins. JAM: Junctional adhesion molecule; ZO: Zonula occludens.

that may influence TJ stability are related to energy depletion and cAMP level changes. ATP depletion downregulates TJs[59], whereas cAMP induces increase of TER and reduced paracellular permeability[58]. Cell cycle also affects TJs morphology, according to development of differentiation of the cell. Cell cycle regulation on TJs can be both quantitative (enhanced or reduced expression of the same molecular substates) and qualitative (changes of molecular substrates, e.g., differential expression of claudins during development). Extracellular events with the potential for TJ regulation include the following five aspects. Direct interaction of TJ proteins to other cell proteins; a typical example is endothelial interaction to leukocyte membrane antigens that induces site-specific TJ dissociation[60]; direct interactions to external antigens: claudins 3 and 4 and occludin are both receptors for Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin[29,61,62]; indirect paracellular (cytokine) effects and hormonic stimulus: (1) proteases[63] - leukocytes are proposed to secrete proteases that destroy TJs by macromolecular cleavage; (2) interleukins[60,64,65] - interleukins can have enhancing or dissociative effect on TJs, depending on the type of interleukin acting and the tissue studied; (3) interferons[60,64,66] - like interleukins, interferons can have both up or downregulating effect on different epithelia; (4) Igs[67] - IgM and IgG interact with coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor (CAR) at inflammation sites, which may play a role at neutrophil transmigration; (5) GFs[58,68,69] - growth factors generally act on epithelia by lysis of their barrier, thereby dissociation of TJs. Both fibroblast growth factor, hepatocyte growth factor/scattering factor and vascular endothelial growth factor decreased TER and increased macromolecular permeability when adjusted to epithelia. However, other growth factors may have opposite results; (6) LTs[70] - Leukotriene D4 was found to induce reorganization of actin network and consequently affect TJs. There is evidence that phosphatidylinositol 3 kinase (PI3K) is involved in the signaling pathway used by LTD4; and (7) Glucocorticoids[71] - although still not completely understood, one study shows that they may destroy epithelial barrier by a mechanism of serine/threonine phosphorylation; oxidative stress: increased oxidative stress is associated with paracellular barrier dysfunction[72,73]; calcium level imbalance: low calcium is related to TJ disturbance[72,74].

Each stimulus affects TJs using a regulatory mechanism. So far the molecular basis of TJ regulation is partially known and continuous investigation reveals its complexity. Phosphorylation is probably the most common, but not the only regulatory pathway, and affects serine/threonine or tyrosine residues, usually with opposite results. Thus, serine/threonine high phosphorylation level is detected when TJ integrity and morphological stability is maximal, whereas low phosphorylation level on the same residues causes TJ dissociation and cytoplasmic localization of occludin. In contrast, tyrosine phosphorylation is related to TJ dissociation without cytoplasmic occludin localization[72,75-78], and block of tyrosine phosphorylation after TJ disruption leads to inability to reassemble[59]. An increasing number of protein kinases are detected to associate directly or indirectly with TJ intracellular components, including protein phosphatase 2A, PKC and atypical PCKs, CK2, PI3K, cAMP dependent kinase, Tyrosine kinases, Mitogen-activated protein kinases and protein tyrosine phosphatases. Another post-

Table 5 Interaction between bacterial strains and tight junctional molecules

Vibrio cholerae[87,88]	It expresses zonula occludens toxin that reversibly increases paracellular permeability, triggering phospholipase C and protein kinase Ca dependent actin polymerization This process is primary or secondary related to TJ disruption
Shigella flexneri[89]	Secretes heat stable proteins that affect intestinal cells and lead to TJ disruption, even in the absence of living bacteria
Clostridium perfringens[29,31,61,62]	Its enterotoxin interacts with high affinity to claudin-4, therefore also known as CPE-R Lower affinity receptors are claudin-3 and occludin. CPE is proposed to be a multifunctional toxin that first induces cell damage at the level of the cell membrane, and thereby relates to TJ proteins, causing structural and functional alterations[61] Michl *et al*[31] have studied the effect of CPE on pancreatic cell cancers that expressed claudin 4[31], and they suggest that targeting of claudin-4 expressing tumors with CPE can represent a promising treatment method
Clostridium difficile[90]	This pathogenic microorganism, known etiologic factor of pseudomembranous colitis, secretes two toxins TcdA and TcdB that act through the Rho GTPase pathway to produce cell damage Study for their effect on epithelial TJ structure assumed that they lead to actin rearrangement, actin-ZO1 dissociation and dissociation of TJ components with changes of their cytoplasmic localization[90]
EPEC[91-93]	EPEC secretes through the type Ⅲ secretion mechanism[87] the EspF protein, that is dose-dependently related to TER and epithelial barrier disruption and cytoplasmic localization of occludin[91] These effects seem to relate primary with phosphorylation of 20 kDa myosin light chain and cytoskeletal contraction. Occludin appears dephosphorylated on serine/threonine residues[92] The pathogenic action of EPEC on the intestinal epithelium is reversed by Saccharomyces boulardii[93]

CPE: Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin; CPE-R: Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin receptor; EPEC: Enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli*; TJ: Tight junction; ZO: Zonula occludens; GTPase: Guanosine triphosphatase.

translational mechanism that may participate in TJ regulation is N Glycozylation, occurring on CAR[79]. Proteolytic cleavage of occludin is mediated by PMNs during their transmigration and leads to a 22 kDa molecule without barrier-forming potential[63]. Finally, there is evidence that TJ composition can be regulated by transcription and translation modulation. For instance, symplekin and GATA-4 have been found to regulate TJ components such as claudin-2 and ZO-2[80-82].

TJs AT THE INTESTINAL BARRIER - CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS

General considerations and interactions

TJs are expressed by the intestinal columnar epithelium. As the TJs of every epithelial tissue, there are occludin and special claudins expressed at intestinal TJs that mainly regulate the permeability of the epithelial layer under normal conditions. TJ strands are copolymers of heterogeneous claudin species and occludin, and heterogeneous claudin species constitute the backbone of TJ strands *in situ*[24].

Occludin associated with ZO-1 in a linear strand is detected among the intestinal epithelia and is strictly related to the differentiation status[83]. In highly differentiated adenocarcinomas, occludin and ZO-1 are normally expressed and form TJ structures. On the contrary, low differentiation carcinomas are characterized by low or absent occludin expression, whereas ZO-1, although normally expressed, appears to concentrate at the inner membrane area in a dotted pattern.

The intestinal epithelium is in continuous contact with the microbial ecosystem of the gut, with which it establishes a dynamic relationship. Based mainly on culturing techniques it, had initially been estimated that more than 500 bacterial species inhabit the human gut[84]. With the advancement of metagenomic technology, the magnitude of bacterial species diversity was raised to 15 000 to 36 000 species based on rRNA sequence analysis[85]. A recent release of the data from the Metagenomics of the Human Intestinal Tract project revealed a total of 3.3 million non-redundant microbial genes in human fecal specimens[86]. Intestinal epithelial cells and bacteria interact in a continuous so-called "cross-talk", for mutual benefit. TJs participate in this interaction in a primary or a secondary way. They possess proteins that act as pathogen receptors and directly bind to the bacterial wall. Moreover, TJs can be secondarily affected by cytokine expression and by rearrangement of the actin cytoskeleton induced by other bacterial mechanisms, such as intimin-Tir mechanism of enteropathogenic *Escherichia coli*[87]. Some known interactions between bacterial strains and tight junctional macromolecules are described in (Table 5)[29,31,61,62,87-93]. Probiotics have a positive effect on TJ barrier, thus enhancing the epithelial resistance to pathogens, also reducing the paracellular permeability of antigens that may cause inflammation[94].

Dendritic cells, antigen presenting cells that belong to the subepithelial immune system, mediate a novel mechanism of bacterial uptake[95]. DCs send dendrites that express TJ proteins (occludin, claudin 1, ZO1) through the gaps between epithelial cells. These dendrites disassociate transcellular interactions, creating new ones between their surface proteins and previous cells. In this way, they send their dendrites to the epithelial surface and sample bacteria, without disrupting the integrity of the epithelial barrier.

Clinical implications

Several lines of evidence suggest that TJs are involved in the pathogenesis of inflammatory and non-inflammatory intestinal diseases. TJ disruption leads to an inadequate epithelial barrier and, subsequently, to an incontrollable water and electrolyte loss. Secondly, intestinal TJ disrup-

tion is implicated in the pathogenesis of diverse extraintestinal autoimmune and inflammatory diseases. Thirdly, intestinal TJs may be secondarily disrupted in the course of several intestinal or extraintestinal diseases, leading to their further aggravation through promotion of systemic responses to endotoxin escape from the gut lumen.

Pathogenetic role in intestinal diseases: Changes at the level of TJs are related to the inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD), Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. These are diseases that display a course of recurrent exacerbation and subsidence periods. At the peak of the IBDs, polymorphonuclear neutrophils transmigrate through the epithelial layer and induce inflammation at the intestinal surface. Transmigration is accompanied by an increase of the epithelial permeability to ions and macromolecules, as a result of downregulation of TJ. More specifically, occludin seems to be downregulated in a mechanism different from that of other TJ proteins[96]. The observation that, in clinically asymptomatic Crohn's disease patients, increased intestinal epithelial permeability precedes clinical relapse by as much as 1 year, raised the assumption that permeability defect may be an early event in disease reactivation. Further evidence supporting that abnormal intestinal permeability occurs early in the pathogenesis of Crohn's disease is provided by a study demonstrating intestinal barrier disruption, even in the non-inflamed parts of ileum from patients with Crohn's disease[97]. The primary and potentially genetically determined association of intestinal TJs disruption with the evolution of IBD came from studies demonstrating increased gut permeability in otherwise healthy relatives of people with IBD[98]. However, the genetic factors implicated in these phenomena have not been revealed yet and the opposite opinion, that TJ disruption is a secondary event to the inflammatory process in IBD, is still under consideration[98,99]. Notably, disease exacerbations and the risk of developing IBD have been associated with emotional stress[100]. Experimental and clinical data provided evidence that psychological stress exerts injurious effects on intestinal TJs and increases gut permeability in IBD and irritable bowel syndrome[101,102]. Therefore, the pathogenetic role of intestinal TJs disruption in IBD beyond its potential genetic basis has an environmental stress-related component as well.

Celiac disease is an immune-mediated enteropathy triggered by an inappropriate T cell-mediated response to ingested gluten and its component gliadin. Clinical and experimental studies suggest that altered intestinal barrier function might play an inciting role in the development of celiac disease by allowing gliadin to cross the intestinal barrier and activate the immune system. Zonulin is the 47 kDa intestinal epithelial protein analogue of zonula occludens toxin (Zot) of Vibrio cholerae. Zonulin is normally expressed and secreted to the surface of intestinal and other epithelia (heart, brain). Zonulin and Zot have the same receptor on the cell surface and both trigger actin polymerization by PLC and PKCa pathways. Zonulin has been proposed to be the initial factor for the pathogenesis of celiac disease[87]. The pathogenetic role of intestinal TJs disruption in celiac disease is supported by studies demonstrating that increased intestinal permeability exists prior to disease onset, persists in asymptomatic patients who were on a gluten-free diet and is also present in a significant proportion of healthy first-degree relatives of patients with celiac disease who also have increased intestinal permeability[103-106].

Pathogenetic role in extraintestinal diseases: A combination of predisposing genetics, dysregulated intestinal barrier function and aberrant immune responses play an inciting role in type 1 diabetes. Increased gut permeability is believed to facilitate increased exposure to antigens that can trigger autoimmune destruction of the insulin-producing pancreatic beta cells[107]. Several lines of experimental and clinical data suggest that intestinal TJs disruption and increased gut permeability is an early event with a pathogenetic association with disease onset. Specifically, experimental studies with the Biobreeding diabetes-prone rat (BBDP), an inbred line in which autoimmune diabetes spontaneously develops when weaned onto a normal diet, showed that increased intestinal permeability, associated with decreased expression of the TJ protein claudin-1, precede the onset of insulitis and clinical diabetes[108]. Also, increased intestinal permeability was found in diabetic patients at various stages of disease progression and their relatives; however, prediabetic subjects had the greatest increase[109,110]. Zonulin has been proposed to be the initial factor for the pathogenesis of diabetes mellitus type 1[110].

Food allergies are expressed as adverse multisystemic immune-mediated reactions to ingested food proteins/antigens. Current pathogenetic aspects highlight the pivotal role of increased intestinal permeability, which permits increased dietary antigen transport across the intestinal barrier and exposure of dietary antigens to the mucosal immune system, leading to the development of the dietary antigen-specific response. In support of this hypothesis, intestinal permeability in infants with food allergies was significantly increased compared with that seen in healthy children[111]. In subjects with food allergies, intestinal permeability remained increased even after 6 mo of an allergen-free diet, indicating that the increased permeability probably preexists and is independent of food antigen stimulation[112]. Additional data supporting a role for increased intestinal permeability in the development of food antigen sensitization and food allergies are provided by recent clinical studies that demonstrate an association between increased intestinal permeability and the development of new-onset food allergies in patients after liver and heart transplantation under immunosuppressant therapy. These allergies were not related to the passive transfer of food antigen-specific IgE or lymphocytes from donors to previously nonallergic recipients, as were developed even in cases of non-allergic donors[113,114]. It is considered that immunosuppressive agents disrupt intestinal TJs, thus increasing permeability

and facilitating presentation of food allergens to the immune system[115].

Beyond diabetes type 1, a similar mechanism has been proposed to contribute to the pathogenesis of diverse autoimmune diseases like atopic dermatitis, ankylosing spondylitis, Hashimoto's thyroiditis and autoimmune hepatitis. The classical paradigm of autoimmune pathogenesis involving specific gene makeup and exposure to environmental triggers has been recently challenged by the addition of a third element, the loss of intestinal barrier function[116]. Disruption of intestinal TJs in genetically predisposed subjects might trigger a pathological immune response. According to this theory, once the autoimmune process is activated, it is not auto-perpetuating, but rather can be modulated or even reversed by preventing the continuous interplay between genes and environment, or in other words, by preventing loss of gut barrier function[116]. A zonulin - induced intestinal TJs disruption has been proposed as the responsible mechanism of barrier dysfunction allowing antigens to invade subepithelial and cause autoimmune reactions[87].

Secondarily affected in intestinal and extraintestinal diseases: Diverse intestinal and extraintestinal diseases during their course exert injurious effects on the integrity of intestinal TJs. Disruption of intestinal barrier function further subsequently aggravates through promotion of a systemic inflammatory response and the structural and functional integrity of the diseased and other organs, leading to clinical deterioration. Thus, although secondarily affected, dysfunction of the gut barrier exerts a pivotal role for the clinical outcome of diverse diseases. There are two main theories of how this may occur. The first one supports the view that after an initial insult, the intestinal barrier is compromised, thus allowing the passage of intestinal bacteria and endotoxins in mesenteric lymph nodes, portal circulation and normally sterile extraintestinal tissues (bacterial translocation)[117]. This process causes systemic infections and promotes a systemic inflammatory response both associated with distant organ failure and development of a septic state[118]. The second theory supports that, after the initial injurious insult and disruption of gut barrier integrity, bacteria and endotoxins crossing the mucosal barrier activate an intestinal inflammatory response, even when these translocating factors are trapped within the gut wall or intestinal lymph nodes and do not reach the systemic circulation[119]. Thus, the gut becomes a proinflammatory organ and gut-derived inflammatory factors, carried mainly in mesenteric lymph, induce a systemic inflammatory response and multiple organ failure[119-121]. In both theories, the intestinal TJs are further disrupted under the influence of systemic cytokinemia, further aggravating intestinal barrier function and leading to a vicious cycle.

The above described mechanisms may occur in diverse clinical states such as in intestinal ischemia[122], hemorrhagic shock[123,124], in critically ill patients[125], total parenteral nutrition[126], radiation enteritis[127], burns[128], ileus[129], acute pancreatitis[130], sepsis[131], cardiac bypass surgery[132], chemotherapy[133], obstructive jaundice[134,135], alcoholic liver disease[136], liver resections[137,138] and liver cirrhosis[139-141].

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Protection against external stimuli and challenging factors is mainly offered by the skin with its several layers, containing cells at different levels of differentiation, in order to better serve this function. In an analogous way, the epithelium covering the gastro-intestinal tract protects against several "foreign factors" whether they may be chemicals, microorganisms or of a different nature. At the same time, the intestine has to serve an equally important opposite function; the selective permeability of needed nutrients from the intestinal lumen into the circulation and into the internal milieu in general. These essential life-sustaining opposite functions are performed in the intestine almost exclusively by a monolayer epithelium, the intestinal epithelium, and one of the key elements, if not the most important for this "compartmentalization" function, is the presence and the versatility of existing TJs.

The study of the structure of TJs has led to exciting new information and now over 40 macromolecular components are in the picture. However, we still lack detailed information about the mode of extracellular associations between occludin and claudins and the mechanism(s) by which they form a tight seal between cell membranes. The fact that several molecular combinations exist in different tissues certainly suggests that there is extremely fine tuning in determination of paracellular permeability, in a highly tissue-specific manner. Information is also missing regarding the details of assembly and disassembly of TJs and the exact role of each factor affecting the phenomena. Further understanding of these processes will allow us to design pharmacological interventions with impressive tissue specificity and will endow us with a better understanding of several pathogenetic mechanisms at the molecular level. Pharmacological modulation of intestinal permeability in a specific manner will enable us to treat and even prevent several intestinal and extraintestinal diseases, possibly overcoming the issue of severe side effects observed with current treatment modalities. Furthermore, understanding the specific differences in nucleotide/protein sequences of tight junctional macromolecules among individuals will allow the establishment of "personalized medicine" therapeutic modalities in the future.

REFERENCES

1 **Kachar B**, Reese TS. Evidence for the lipidic nature of tight junction strands. *Nature* 1982; **296**: 464-466
2 **Furuse M**, Hirase T, Itoh M, Nagafuchi A, Yonemura S, Tsukita S, Tsukita S. Occludin: a novel integral membrane protein localizing at tight junctions. *J Cell Biol* 1993; **123**: 1777-1788
3 **Muresan Z**, Paul DL, Goodenough DA. Occludin 1B, a variant of the tight junction protein occludin. *Mol Biol Cell* 2000;

11: 627-634
4 **Furuse M**, Sasaki H, Fujimoto K, Tsukita S. A single gene product, claudin-1 or -2, reconstitutes tight junction strands and recruits occludin in fibroblasts. *J Cell Biol* 1998; **143**: 391-401
5 **Fujimoto K**. Freeze-fracture replica electron microscopy combined with SDS digestion for cytochemical labeling of integral membrane proteins. Application to the immunogold labeling of intercellular junctional complexes. *J Cell Sci* 1995; **108** (Pt 11): 3443-3449
6 **Traweger A**, Fang D, Liu YC, Stelzhammer W, Krizbai IA, Fresser F, Bauer HC, Bauer H. The tight junction-specific protein occludin is a functional target of the E3 ubiquitin-protein ligase itch. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 10201-10208
7 **Cordenonsi M**, Turco F, D'atri F, Hammar E, Martinucci G, Meggio F, Citi S. Xenopus laevis occludin. Identification of in vitro phosphorylation sites by protein kinase CK2 and association with cingulin. *Eur J Biochem* 1999; **264**: 374-384
8 **Saitou M**, Fujimoto K, Doi Y, Itoh M, Fujimoto T, Furuse M, Takano H, Noda T, Tsukita S. Occludin-deficient embryonic stem cells can differentiate into polarized epithelial cells bearing tight junctions. *J Cell Biol* 1998; **141**: 397-408
9 **Saitou M**, Furuse M, Sasaki H, Schulzke JD, Fromm M, Takano H, Noda T, Tsukita S. Complex phenotype of mice lacking occludin, a component of tight junction strands. *Mol Biol Cell* 2000; **11**: 4131-4142
10 **Furuse M**, Fujita K, Hiiragi T, Fujimoto K, Tsukita S. Claudin-1 and -2: novel integral membrane proteins localizing at tight junctions with no sequence similarity to occludin. *J Cell Biol* 1998; **141**: 1539-1550
11 **Heiskala M**, Peterson PA, Yang Y. The roles of claudin superfamily proteins in paracellular transport. *Traffic* 2001; **2**: 93-98
12 **Van Itallie CM**, Anderson JM. Claudins and epithelial paracellular transport. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2006; **68**: 403-429
13 **Tsukita S**, Furuse M, Itoh M. Multifunctional strands in tight junctions. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **2**: 285-293
14 **González-Mariscal L**, Betanzos A, Nava P, Jaramillo BE. Tight junction proteins. *Prog Biophys Mol Biol* 2003; **81**: 1-44
15 **Tsukita S**, Furuse M. Occludin and claudins in tight-junction strands: leading or supporting players? *Trends Cell Biol* 1999; **9**: 268-273
16 **Fanning AS**, Mitic LL, Anderson JM. Transmembrane proteins in the tight junction barrier. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 1999; **10**: 1337-1345
17 **Rahner C**, Mitic LL, Anderson JM. Heterogeneity in expression and subcellular localization of claudins 2, 3, 4, and 5 in the rat liver, pancreas, and gut. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **120**: 411-422
18 **Reyes JL**, Lamas M, Martin D, del Carmen Namorado M, Islas S, Luna J, Tauc M, González-Mariscal L. The renal segmental distribution of claudins changes with development. *Kidney Int* 2002; **62**: 476-487
19 **Enck AH**, Berger UV, Yu AS. Claudin-2 is selectively expressed in proximal nephron in mouse kidney. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2001; **281**: F966-F974
20 **Kiuchi-Saishin Y**, Gotoh S, Furuse M, Takasuga A, Tano Y, Tsukita S. Differential expression patterns of claudins, tight junction membrane proteins, in mouse nephron segments. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2002; **13**: 875-886
21 **Turksen K**, Troy TC. Claudin-6: a novel tight junction molecule is developmentally regulated in mouse embryonic epithelium. *Dev Dyn* 2001; **222**: 292-300
22 **Turksen K**, Troy TC. Permeability barrier dysfunction in transgenic mice overexpressing claudin 6. *Development* 2002; **129**: 1775-1784
23 **Hellani A**, Ji J, Mauduit C, Deschildre C, Tabone E, Benahmed M. Developmental and hormonal regulation of the expression of oligodendrocyte-specific protein/claudin 11 in mouse testis. *Endocrinology* 2000; **141**: 3012-3019
24 **Furuse M**, Sasaki H, Tsukita S. Manner of interaction of heterogeneous claudin species within and between tight junction strands. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **147**: 891-903
25 **Morita K**, Sasaki H, Furuse M, Tsukita S. Endothelial claudin: claudin-5/TMVCF constitutes tight junction strands in endothelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **147**: 185-194
26 **Morita K**, Sasaki H, Fujimoto K, Furuse M, Tsukita S. Claudin-11/OSP-based tight junctions of myelin sheaths in brain and Sertoli cells in testis. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **145**: 579-588
27 **Colegio OR**, Van Itallie CM, McCrea HJ, Rahner C, Anderson JM. Claudins create charge-selective channels in the paracellular pathway between epithelial cells. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2002; **283**: C142-C147
28 **Van Itallie C**, Rahner C, Anderson JM. Regulated expression of claudin-4 decreases paracellular conductance through a selective decrease in sodium permeability. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **107**: 1319-1327
29 **Katahira J**, Inoue N, Horiguchi Y, Matsuda M, Sugimoto N. Molecular cloning and functional characterization of the receptor for Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin. *J Cell Biol* 1997; **136**: 1239-1247
30 **McClane BA**. Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin and intestinal tight junctions. *Trends Microbiol* 2000; **8**: 145-146
31 **Michl P**, Buchholz M, Rolke M, Kunsch S, Löhr M, McClane B, Tsukita S, Leder G, Adler G, Gress TM. Claudin-4: a new target for pancreatic cancer treatment using Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 678-684
32 **Martìn-Padura I**, Lostaglio S, Schneemann M, Williams L, Romano M, Fruscella P, Panzeri C, Stoppacciaro A, Ruco L, Villa A, Simmons D, Dejana E. Junctional adhesion molecule, a novel member of the immunoglobulin superfamily that distributes at intercellular junctions and modulates monocyte transmigration. *J Cell Biol* 1998; **142**: 117-127
33 **Itoh M**, Sasaki H, Furuse M, Ozaki H, Kita T, Tsukita S. Junctional adhesion molecule (JAM) binds to PAR-3: a possible mechanism for the recruitment of PAR-3 to tight junctions. *J Cell Biol* 2001; **154**: 491-497
34 **Liu Y**, Nusrat A, Schnell FJ, Reaves TA, Walsh S, Pochet M, Parkos CA. Human junction adhesion molecule regulates tight junction resealing in epithelia. *J Cell Sci* 2000; **113** (Pt 13): 2363-2374
35 **Kostrewa D**, Brockhaus M, D'Arcy A, Dale GE, Nelboeck P, Schmid G, Mueller F, Bazzoni G, Dejana E, Bartfai T, Winkler FK, Hennig M. X-ray structure of junctional adhesion molecule: structural basis for homophilic adhesion via a novel dimerization motif. *EMBO J* 2001; **20**: 4391-4398
36 **Ebnet K**, Suzuki A, Ohno S, Vestweber D. Junctional adhesion molecules (JAMs): more molecules with dual functions? *J Cell Sci* 2004; **117**: 19-29
37 **Cunningham SA**, Arrate MP, Rodriguez JM, Bjercke RJ, Vanderslice P, Morris AP, Brock TA. A novel protein with homology to the junctional adhesion molecule. Characterization of leukocyte interactions. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 34750-34756
38 **Ikenouchi J**, Furuse M, Furuse K, Sasaki H, Tsukita S, Tsukita S. Tricellulin constitutes a novel barrier at tricellular contacts of epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 2005; **171**: 939-945
39 **Riazuddin S**, Ahmed ZM, Fanning AS, Lagziel A, Kitajiri S, Ramzan K, Khan SN, Chattaraj P, Friedman PL, Anderson JM, Belyantseva IA, Forge A, Riazuddin S, Friedman TB. Tricellulin is a tight-junction protein necessary for hearing. *Am J Hum Genet* 2006; **79**: 1040-1051
40 **Kikuchi S**, Ninomiya T, Tatsumi H, Sawada N, Kojima T. Tricellulin is expressed in autotypic tight junctions of peripheral myelinating Schwann cells. *J Histochem Cytochem* 2010; **58**: 1067-1073
41 **Masuda R**, Semba S, Mizuuchi E, Yanagihara K, Yokozaki H. Negative regulation of the tight junction protein tricellulin by snail-induced epithelial-mesenchymal transition in gastric carcinoma cells. *Pathobiology* 2010; **77**: 106-113

42 **Kim E**, Niethammer M, Rothschild A, Jan YN, Sheng M. Clustering of Shaker-type K+ channels by interaction with a family of membrane-associated guanylate kinases. *Nature* 1995; **378**: 85-88

43 **Kim E**, Naisbitt S, Hsueh YP, Rao A, Rothschild A, Craig AM, Sheng M. GKAP, a novel synaptic protein that interacts with the guanylate kinase-like domain of the PSD-95/SAP90 family of channel clustering molecules. *J Cell Biol* 1997; **136**: 669-678

44 **Fanning AS**, Jameson BJ, Jesaitis LA, Anderson JM. The tight junction protein ZO-1 establishes a link between the transmembrane protein occludin and the actin cytoskeleton. *J Biol Chem* 1998; **273**: 29745-29753

45 **Itoh M**, Furuse M, Morita K, Kubota K, Saitou M, Tsukita S. Direct binding of three tight junction-associated MAGUKs, ZO-1, ZO-2, and ZO-3, with the COOH termini of claudins. *J Cell Biol* 1999; **147**: 1351-1363

46 **Ebnet K**, Schulz CU, Meyer Zu Brickwedde MK, Pendl GG, Vestweber D. Junctional adhesion molecule interacts with the PDZ domain-containing proteins AF-6 and ZO-1. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 27979-27988

47 **Wittchen ES**, Haskins J, Stevenson BR. Protein interactions at the tight junction. Actin has multiple binding partners, and ZO-1 forms independent complexes with ZO-2 and ZO-3. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274**: 35179-35185

48 **Cordenonsi M**, D'Atri F, Hammar E, Parry DA, Kendrick-Jones J, Shore D, Citi S. Cingulin contains globular and coiled-coil domains and interacts with ZO-1, ZO-2, ZO-3, and myosin. *J Cell Biol* 1999; 147: 1569-1582

49 **Itoh M**, Nagafuchi A, Yonemura S, Kitani-Yasuda T, Tsukita S, Tsukita S. The 220-kD protein colocalizing with cadherins in non-epithelial cells is identical to ZO-1, a tight junction-associated protein in epithelial cells: cDNA cloning and immunoelectron microscopy. *J Cell Biol* 1993; **121**: 491-502

50 **González-Mariscal L**, Islas S, Contreras RG, García-Villegas MR, Betanzos A, Vega J, Diaz-Quiñónez A, Martín-Orozco N, Ortiz-Navarrete V, Cereijido M, Valdés J. Molecular characterization of the tight junction protein ZO-1 in MDCK cells. *Exp Cell Res* 1999; **248**: 97-109

51 **Betanzos A**, Huerta M, Lopez-Bayghen E, Azuara E, Amerena J, González-Mariscal L. The tight junction protein ZO-2 associates with Jun, Fos and C/EBP transcription factors in epithelial cells. *Exp Cell Res* 2004; **292**: 51-66

52 **Yamamoto T**, Harada N, Kano K, Taya S, Canaani E, Matsuura Y, Mizoguchi A, Ide C, Kaibuchi K. The Ras target AF-6 interacts with ZO-1 and serves as a peripheral component of tight junctions in epithelial cells. *J Cell Biol* 1997; **139**: 785-795

53 **Mandai K**, Nakanishi H, Satoh A, Obaishi H, Wada M, Nishioka H, Itoh M, Mizoguchi A, Aoki T, Fujimoto T, Matsuda Y, Tsukita S, Takai Y. Afadin: A novel actin filament-binding protein with one PDZ domain localized at cadherin-based cell-to-cell adherens junction. *J Cell Biol* 1997; **139**: 517-528

54 **Citi S**, Denisenko N. Phosphorylation of the tight junction protein cingulin and the effects of protein kinase inhibitors and activators in MDCK epithelial cells. *J Cell Sci* 1995; **108** (Pt 8): 2917-2926

55 **Yonemura S**, Itoh M, Nagafuchi A, Tsukita S. Cell-to-cell adherens junction formation and actin filament organization: similarities and differences between non-polarized fibroblasts and polarized epithelial cells. *J Cell Sci* 1995; **108** (Pt 1): 127-142

56 **Asakura T**, Nakanishi H, Sakisaka T, Takahashi K, Mandai K, Nishimura M, Sasaki T, Takai Y. Similar and differential behaviour between the nectin-afadin-ponsin and cadherin-catenin systems during the formation and disruption of the polarized junctional alignment in epithelial cells. *Genes Cells* 1999; **4**: 573-581

57 **Ando-Akatsuka Y**, Yonemura S, Itoh M, Furuse M, Tsukita S. Differential behavior of E-cadherin and occludin in their colocalization with ZO-1 during the establishment of epithelial cell polarity. *J Cell Physiol* 1999; **179**: 115-125

58 **Dye JF**, Leach L, Clark P, Firth JA. Cyclic AMP and acidic fibroblast growth factor have opposing effects on tight and adherens junctions in microvascular endothelial cells in vitro. *Microvasc Res* 2001; **62**: 94-113

59 **Tsukamoto T**, Nigam SK. Role of tyrosine phosphorylation in the reassembly of occludin and other tight junction proteins. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **276**: F737-F750

60 **Oshima T**, Laroux FS, Coe LL, Morise Z, Kawachi S, Bauer P, Grisham MB, Specian RD, Carter P, Jennings S, Granger DN, Joh T, Alexander JS. Interferon-gamma and interleukin-10 reciprocally regulate endothelial junction integrity and barrier function. *Microvasc Res* 2001; **61**: 130-143

61 **Katahira J**, Sugiyama H, Inoue N, Horiguchi Y, Matsuda M, Sugimoto N. Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin utilizes two structurally related membrane proteins as functional receptors in vivo. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 26652-26658

62 **McClane BA**. The complex interactions between Clostridium perfringens enterotoxin and epithelial tight junctions. *Toxicon* 2001; **39**: 1781-1791

63 **Burns AR**, Bowden RA, MacDonell SD, Walker DC, Odebunmi TO, Donnachie EM, Simon SI, Entman ML, Smith CW. Analysis of tight junctions during neutrophil transendothelial migration. *J Cell Sci* 2000; **113** (Pt 1): 45-57

64 **Ahdieh M**, Vandenbos T, Youakim A. Lung epithelial barrier function and wound healing are decreased by IL-4 and IL-13 and enhanced by IFN-gamma. *Am J Physiol Cell Physiol* 2001; **281**: C2029-C2038

65 **Nishiyama R**, Sakaguchi T, Kinugasa T, Gu X, MacDermott RP, Podolsky DK, Reinecker HC. Interleukin-2 receptor beta subunit-dependent and -independent regulation of intestinal epithelial tight junctions. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 35571-35580

66 **Lechner J**, Krall M, Netzer A, Radmayr C, Ryan MP, Pfaller W. Effects of interferon alpha-2b on barrier function and junctional complexes of renal proximal tubular LLC-PK1 cells. *Kidney Int* 1999; **55**: 2178-2191

67 **Ito M**, Kodama M, Masuko M, Yamaura M, Fuse K, Uesugi Y, Hirono S, Okura Y, Kato K, Hotta Y, Honda T, Kuwano R, Aizawa Y. Expression of coxsackievirus and adenovirus receptor in hearts of rats with experimental autoimmune myocarditis. *Circ Res* 2000; **86**: 275-280

68 **Martin TA**, Mansel RE, Jiang WG. **Antagonistic effect of** NK4 on HGF/SF induced changes in the transendothelial resistance (TER) and paracellular permeability of human vascular endothelial cells. *J Cell Physiol* 2002; **192**: 268-275

69 **Pedram A**, Razandi M, Levin ER. Deciphering vascular endothelial cell growth factor/vascular permeability factor signaling to vascular permeability. Inhibition by atrial natriuretic peptide. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 44385-44398

70 **Massoumi R**, Sjölander A. The inflammatory mediator leukotriene D4 triggers a rapid reorganisation of the actin cytoskeleton in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Eur J Cell Biol* 1998; **76**: 185-191

71 **Singer KL**, Stevenson BR, Woo PL, Firestone GL. **Relationship** of serine/threonine phosphorylation/dephosphorylation signaling to glucocorticoid regulation of tight junction permeability and ZO-1 distribution in nontransformed mammary epithelial cells. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 16108-16115

72 **Rao RK**, Baker RD, Baker SS, Gupta A, Holycross M. Oxidant-induced disruption of intestinal epithelial barrier function: role of protein tyrosine phosphorylation. *Am J Physiol* 1997; **273**: G812-G823

73 **Rao RK**, Basuroy S, Rao VU, Karnaky Jr KJ, Gupta A. Tyrosine phosphorylation and dissociation of occludin-ZO-1 and E-cadherin-beta-catenin complexes from the cytoskeleton by oxidative stress. *Biochem J* 2002; **368**: 471-481

74 **Ma TY**, Tran D, Hoa N, Nguyen D, Merryfield M, Tarnawski A. Mechanism of extracellular calcium regulation of intestinal epithelial tight junction permeability: role of cytoskeletal involvement. *Microsc Res Tech* 2000; **51**: 156-168

75 **Staddon JM**, Herrenknecht K, Smales C, Rubin LL. Evidence that tyrosine phosphorylation may increase tight junction permeability. *J Cell Sci* 1995; **108** (Pt 2): 609-619

76 **Takeda H**, Tsukita S. Effects of tyrosine phosphorylation on tight junctions in temperature-sensitive v-src-transfected MDCK cells. *Cell Struct Funct* 1995; **20**: 387-393

77 **Morgado-Díaz JA**, de Souza W. Evidence that increased tyrosine phosphorylation causes disassembly of adherens junctions but does not perturb paracellular permeability in Caco-2 cells. *Tissue Cell* 2001; **33**: 500-513

78 **Atkinson KJ**, Rao RK. Role of protein tyrosine phosphorylation in acetaldehyde-induced disruption of epithelial tight junctions. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **280**: G1280-G1288

79 **Tomko RP**, Xu R, Philipson L. HCAR and MCAR: the human and mouse cellular receptors for subgroup C adenoviruses and group B coxsackieviruses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 3352-3356

80 **Escaffit F**, Boudreau F, Beaulieu JF. Differential expression of claudin-2 along the human intestine: Implication of GATA-4 in the maintenance of claudin-2 in differentiating cells. *J Cell Physiol* 2005; **203**: 15-26

81 **Buchert M**, Papin M, Bonnans C, Darido C, Raye WS, Garambois V, Pélegrin A, Bourgaux JF, Pannequin J, Joubert D, Hollande F. Symplekin promotes tumorigenicity by up-regulating claudin-2 expression. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 2628-2633

82 **Benoit YD**, Paré F, Francoeur C, Jean D, Tremblay E, Boudreau F, Escaffit F, Beaulieu JF. Cooperation between HNF-1alpha, Cdx2, and GATA-4 in initiating an enterocytic differentiation program in a normal human intestinal epithelial progenitor cell line. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2010; **298**: G504-G517

83 **Kimura Y**, Shiozaki H, Hirao M, Maeno Y, Doki Y, Inoue M, Monden T, Ando-Akatsuka Y, Furuse M, Tsukita S, Monden M. Expression of occludin, tight-junction-associated protein, in human digestive tract. *Am J Pathol* 1997; **151**: 45-54

84 **Manson JM**, Rauch M, Gilmore MS. The commensal microbiology of the gastrointestinal tract. *Adv Exp Med Biol* 2008; **635**: 15-28

85 **Frank DN**, Pace NR. Gastrointestinal microbiology enters the metagenomics era. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2008; **24**: 4-10

86 **Qin J**, Li R, Raes J, Arumugam M, Burgdorf KS, Manichanh C, Nielsen T, Pons N, Levenez F, Yamada T, Mende DR, Li J, Xu J, Li S, Li D, Cao J, Wang B, Liang H, Zheng H, Xie Y, Tap J, Lepage P, Bertalan M, Batto JM, Hansen T, Le Paslier D, Linneberg A, Nielsen HB, Pelletier E, Renault P, Sicheritz-Ponten T, Turner K, Zhu H, Yu C, Li S, Jian M, Zhou Y, Li Y, Zhang X, Li S, Qin N, Yang H, Wang J, Brunak S, Doré J, Guarner F, Kristiansen K, Pedersen O, Parkhill J, Weissenbach J, Bork P, Ehrlich SD, Wang J. A human gut microbial gene catalogue established by metagenomic sequencing. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 59-65

87 **Wang W**, Uzzau S, Goldblum SE, Fasano A. Human zonulin, a potential modulator of intestinal tight junctions. *J Cell Sci* 2000; **113** Pt 24: 4435-4440

88 **Di Pierro M**, Lu R, Uzzau S, Wang W, Margaretten K, Pazzani C, Maimone F, Fasano A. Zonula occludens toxin structure-function analysis. Identification of the fragment biologically active on tight junctions and of the zonulin receptor binding domain. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 19160-19165

89 **Sakaguchi T**, Köhler H, Gu X, McCormick BA, Reinecker HC. Shigella flexneri regulates tight junction-associated proteins in human intestinal epithelial cells. *Cell Microbiol* 2002; **4**: 367-381

90 **Nusrat A**, von Eichel-Streiber C, Turner JR, Verkade P, Madara JL, Parkos CA. Clostridium difficile toxins disrupt epithelial barrier function by altering membrane microdomain localization of tight junction proteins. *Infect Immun* 2001; **69**: 1329-1336

91 **McNamara BP**, Koutsouris A, O'Connell CB, Nougayréde JP, Donnenberg MS, Hecht G. Translocated EspF protein from enteropathogenic Escherichia coli disrupts host intestinal barrier function. *J Clin Invest* 2001; **107**: 621-629

92 **Simonovic I**, Rosenberg J, Koutsouris A, Hecht G. Enteropathogenic Escherichia coli dephosphorylates and dissociates occludin from intestinal epithelial tight junctions. *Cell Microbiol* 2000; **2**: 305-315

93 **Czerucka D**, Dahan S, Mograbi B, Rossi B, Rampal P. Saccharomyces boulardii preserves the barrier function and modulates the signal transduction pathway induced in enteropathogenic Escherichia coli-infected T84 cells. *Infect Immun* 2000; **68**: 5998-6004

94 **Lu L**, Walker WA. Pathologic and physiologic interactions of bacteria with the gastrointestinal epithelium. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2001; **73**: 1124S-1130S

95 **Rescigno M**, Urbano M, Valzasina B, Francolini M, Rotta G, Bonasio R, Granucci F, Kraehenbuhl JP, Ricciardi-Castagnoli P. Dendritic cells express tight junction proteins and penetrate gut epithelial monolayers to sample bacteria. *Nat Immunol* 2001; **2**: 361-367

96 **Kucharzik T**, Walsh SV, Chen J, Parkos CA, Nusrat A. Neutrophil transmigration in inflammatory bowel disease is associated with differential expression of epithelial intercellular junction proteins. *Am J Pathol* 2001; **159**: 2001-2009

97 **Söderholm JD**, Olaison G, Peterson KH, Franzén LE, Lindmark T, Wirén M, Tagesson C, Sjödahl R. Augmented increase in tight junction permeability by luminal stimuli in the non-inflamed ileum of Crohn's disease. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 307-313

98 **Fries W**, Renda MC, Lo Presti MA, Raso A, Orlando A, Oliva L, Giofré MR, Maggio A, Mattaliano A, Macaluso A, Cottone M. Intestinal permeability and genetic determinants in patients, first-degree relatives, and controls in a high-incidence area of Crohn's disease in Southern Italy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 2730-2736

99 **Gassler N**, Rohr C, Schneider A, Kartenbeck J, Bach A, Obermüller N, Otto HF, Autschbach F. Inflammatory bowel disease is associated with changes of enterocytic junctions. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281**: G216-G228

100 **Ringel Y**, Drossman DA. Psychosocial aspects of Crohn's disease. *Surg Clin North Am* 2001; **81**: 231-**252, x**

101 **Piche T**, Barbara G, Aubert P, Bruley des Varannes S, Dainese R, Nano JL, Cremon C, Stanghellini V, De Giorgio R, Galmiche JP, Neunlist M. Impaired intestinal barrier integrity in the colon of patients with irritable bowel syndrome: involvement of soluble mediators. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 196-201

102 **Gareau MG**, Silva MA, Perdue MH. Pathophysiological mechanisms of stress-induced intestinal damage. *Curr Mol Med* 2008; **8**: 274-281

103 **Schulzke JD**, Bentzel CJ, Schulzke I, Riecken EO, Fromm M. Epithelial tight junction structure in the jejunum of children with acute and treated celiac sprue. *Pediatr Res* 1998; **43**: 435-441

104 **Madara JL**, Trier JS. Structural abnormalities of jejunal epithelial cell membranes in celiac sprue. *Lab Invest* 1980; **43**: 254-261

105 **Vogelsang H**, Schwarzenhofer M, Oberhuber G. Changes in gastrointestinal permeability in celiac disease. *Dig Dis* 1998; **16**: 333-336

106 **van Elburg RM**, Uil JJ, Mulder CJ, Heymans HS. Intestinal permeability in patients with coeliac disease and relatives of patients with coeliac disease. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 354-357

107 **Mooradian AD**, Morley JE, Levine AS, Prigge WF, Gebhard RL. Abnormal intestinal permeability to sugars in diabetes mellitus. *Diabetologia* 1986; **29**: 221-224

108 **Neu J**, Reverte CM, Mackey AD, Liboni K, Tuhacek-Tenace LM, Hatch M, Li N, Caicedo RA, Schatz DA, Atkinson M. Changes in intestinal morphology and permeability in the biobreeding rat before the onset of type 1 diabetes. *J Pediatr*

Gastroenterol Nutr 2005; **40**: 589-595
109 **Vaarala O**. Leaking gut in type 1 diabetes. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2008; **24**: 701-706
110 **Sapone A**, de Magistris L, Pietzak M, Clemente MG, Tripathi A, Cucca F, Lampis R, Kryszak D, Cartenì M, Generoso M, Iafusco D, Prisco F, Laghi F, Riegler G, Carratu R, Counts D, Fasano A. Zonulin upregulation is associated with increased gut permeability in subjects with type 1 diabetes and their relatives. *Diabetes* 2006; **55**: 1443-1449
111 **Laudat A**, Arnaud P, Napoly A, Brion F. The intestinal permeability test applied to the diagnosis of food allergy in paediatrics. *West Indian Med J* 1994; **43**: 87-88
112 **Ventura MT**, Polimeno L, Amoruso AC, Gatti F, Annoscia E, Marinaro M, Di Leo E, Matino MG, Buquicchio R, Bonini S, Tursi A, Francavilla A. Intestinal permeability in patients with adverse reactions to food. *Dig Liver Dis* 2006; **38**: 732-736
113 **Boyle RJ**, Hardikar W, Tang ML. The development of food allergy after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2005; **11**: 326-330
114 **Legendre C**, Caillat-Zucman S, Samuel D, Morelon S, Bismuth H, Bach JF, Kreis H. Transfer of symptomatic peanut allergy to the recipient of a combined liver-and-kidney transplant. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **337**: 822-824
115 **Groschwitz KR**, Hogan SP. Intestinal barrier function: molecular regulation and disease pathogenesis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* 2009; **124**: 3-20; quiz 21-22
116 **Visser J**, Rozing J, Sapone A, Lammers K, Fasano A. Tight junctions, intestinal permeability, and autoimmunity: celiac disease and type 1 diabetes paradigms. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2009; **1165**: 195-205
117 **Deitch EA**. The role of intestinal barrier failure and bacterial translocation in the development of systemic infection and multiple organ failure. *Arch Surg* 1990; **125**: 403-404
118 **Deitch EA**, Kemper AC, Specian RD, Berg RD. A study of the relationship among survival, gut-origin sepsis, and bacterial translocation in a model of systemic inflammation. *J Trauma* 1992; **32**: 141-147
119 **Senthil M**, Brown M, Xu DZ, Lu Q, Feketeova E, Deitch EA. Gut-lymph hypothesis of systemic inflammatory response syndrome/multiple-organ dysfunction syndrome: validating studies in a porcine model. *J Trauma* 2006; **60**: 958-965; discussion 965-967
120 **Deitch EA**. Gut lymph and lymphatics: a source of factors leading to organ injury and dysfunction. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2010; **1207** Suppl 1: E103-E111
121 **Deitch EA**, Xu D, Franko L, Ayala A, Chaudry IH. Evidence favoring the role of the gut as a cytokine-generating organ in rats subjected to hemorrhagic shock. *Shock* 1994; **1**: 141-145
122 **Vollmar B**, Menger MD. Intestinal ischemia/reperfusion: microcirculatory pathology and functional consequences. *Langenbecks Arch Surg* 2011; **396**: 13-29
123 **Deitch EA**, Bridges W, Baker J, Ma JW, Ma L, Grisham MB, Granger DN, Specian RD, Berg R. Hemorrhagic shock-induced bacterial translocation is reduced by xanthine oxidase inhibition or inactivation. *Surgery* 1988; **104**: 191-198
124 **Deitch EA**, Senthil M, Brown M, Caputo F, Watkins A, Anjaria D, Badami C, Pisarenko V, Doucet D, Lu Q, Feketeova E, Xu DZ. Trauma-shock-induced gut injury and the production of biologically active intestinal lymph is abrogated by castration in a large animal porcine model. *Shock* 2008; **30**: 135-141
125 **Gatt M**, Reddy BS, MacFie J. Review article: bacterial translocation in the critically ill--evidence and methods of prevention. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 741-757
126 **Alverdy JC**, Aoys E, Moss GS. Total parenteral nutrition promotes bacterial translocation from the gut. *Surgery* 1988; **104**: 185-190
127 **Vagianos C**, Karatzas T, Scopa CD, Panagopoulos C, Tsoni I, Spiliopoulou I, Kalfarentzos F. Neurotensin reduces microbial translocation and improves intestinal mucosa integrity after abdominal radiation. *Eur Surg Res* 1992; **24**: 77-83
128 **Wang Z**, Xiao G, Yao Y, Guo S, Lu K, Sheng Z. The role of bifidobacteria in gut barrier function after thermal injury in rats. *J Trauma* 2006; **61**: 650-657
129 **Deitch EA**, Bridges WM, Ma JW, Ma L, Berg RD, Specian RD. Obstructed intestine as a reservoir for systemic infection. *Am J Surg* 1990; **159**: 394-401
130 **Sharma B**, Srivastava S, Singh N, Sachdev V, Kapur S, Saraya A. Role of probiotics on gut permeability and endotoxemia in patients with acute pancreatitis: a double-blind randomized controlled trial. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2011; **45**: 442-448
131 **Hunninghake GW**, Doerschug KC, Nymon AB, Schmidt GA, Meyerholz DK, Ashare A. Insulin-like growth factor-1 levels contribute to the development of bacterial translocation in sepsis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2010; **182**: 517-525
132 **Sun YJ**, Chen WM, Zhang TZ, Cao HJ, Zhou J. Effects of cardiopulmonary bypass on tight junction protein expressions in intestinal mucosa of rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 5868-5875
133 **van Vliet MJ**, Harmsen HJ, de Bont ES, Tissing WJ. The role of intestinal microbiota in the development and severity of chemotherapy-induced mucositis. *PLoS Pathog* 2010; **6**: e1000879
134 **Assimakopoulos SF**, Tsamandas AC, Louvros E, Vagianos CE, Nikolopoulou VN, Thomopoulos KC, Charonis A, Scopa CD. Intestinal epithelial cell proliferation, apoptosis and expression of tight junction proteins in patients with obstructive jaundice. *Eur J Clin Invest* 2011; **41**: 117-125
135 **Assimakopoulos SF**, Scopa CD, Vagianos CE. Pathophysiology of increased intestinal permeability in obstructive jaundice. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6458-6464
136 **Purohit V**, Bode JC, Bode C, Brenner DA, Choudhry MA, Hamilton F, Kang YJ, Keshavarzian A, Rao R, Sartor RB, Swanson C, Turner JR. Alcohol, intestinal bacterial growth, intestinal permeability to endotoxin, and medical consequences: summary of a symposium. *Alcohol* 2008; **42**: 349-361
137 **Kakkos SK**, Kirkilesis J, Scopa CD, Arvaniti A, Alexandrides T, Vagianos CE. Nonabsorbable antibiotics reduce bacterial and endotoxin translocation in hepatectomised rats. *HPB Surg* 1997; **10**: 283-289; discussion 289-291
138 **Assimakopoulos SF**, Alexandris IH, Scopa CD, Mylonas PG, Thomopoulos KC, Georgiou CD, Nikolopoulou VN, Vagianos CE. Effect of bombesin and neurotensin on gut barrier function in partially hepatectomized rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 6757-6764
139 **Ramos AR**, Matte U, Goldani HA, Oliveira OL, Vieira SM, Silveira TR. Intestinal permeability assessed by 51Cr-EDTA in rats with CCl4 - induced cirrhosis. *Arq Gastroenterol* 2010; **47**: 188-192
140 **Scarpellini E**, Valenza V, Gabrielli M, Lauritano EC, Perotti G, Merra G, Dal Lago A, Ojetti V, Ainora ME, Santoro M, Ghirlanda G, Gasbarrini A. Intestinal permeability in cirrhotic patients with and without spontaneous bacterial peritonitis: is the ring closed? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2010; **105**: 323-327
141 **Lee S**, Son SC, Han MJ, Kim WJ, Kim SH, Kim HR, Jeon WK, Park KH, Shin MG. Increased intestinal macromolecular permeability and urine nitrite excretion associated with liver cirrhosis with ascites. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 3884-3890

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.138

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 138-145
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Effect of fiber supplementation on the microbiota in critically ill patients

Stephen JD O'Keefe, Junhai Ou, James P DeLany, Scott Curry, Erwin Zoetendal, H Rex Gaskins, Scott Gunn

Stephen JD O'Keefe, Junhai Ou, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA 15213, United States
James P DeLany, Division of Endocrinology, Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA 15261, United States
Scott Curry, Division of Infectious Disease, Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA 15261, United States
Erwin Zoetendal, Laboratory of Microbiology, Wageningen University, Wageningen 6703HB, The Netherlands
H Rex Gaskins, Department of Animal Sciences and Pathobiology, Division of Nutritional Sciences, Institute for Genomic Biology, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, Urbana, IL 61801, United States
Scott Gunn, Division of Critical Care Medicine, Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA 15261, United States
Author contributions: O'Keefe SJD, Ou J and Gunn S designed, organized and conducted the studies; Ou J, Delany JP, Zoetendal E and Gaskins HR analyzed and interpreted the data; all authors participated in writing the article.
Supported by NIH NCI R01 CA135379 for O'Keefe and Gaskins Laboratories
Correspondence to: Stephen JD O'Keefe, MD, MSc, FRCP, Division of Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA 15213, United States. sjokeefe@pitt.edu
Telephone: +1-412-6487217 Fax: +1-412-6489115
Received: July 4, 2011 Revised: November 18, 2011
Accepted: December 3, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

AIM: To determine tolerance to fiber supplementation of semi-elemental tube feeds in critically ill patients and measure its effect on colonic microbiota and fermentation.

METHODS: Thirteen intensive care unit patients receiving jejunal feeding with a semi-elemental diet for predominantly necrotizing pancreatitis were studied. The study was divided into 2 parts: first, short-term (3-9 d) clinical tolerance and colonic fermentation as assessed by fecal short chain fatty acid (SCFA) concentrations and breath hydrogen and methane was measured in response to progressive fiber supplementation increasing from 4 g tid up to normal requirement levels of 8 g tid; second, 4 patients with diarrhea were studied for 2-5 wk with maximal supplementation to additionally assess its influence on fecal microbiota quantitated by quantitative polymerase chain reaction (qPCR) of microbial 16S rRNA genes and Human Intestinal Tract Chip (HITChip) microarray analysis. Nearly all patients were receiving antibiotics (10/13) and acid suppressants (11/13) at some stage during the studies.

RESULTS: In group 1, tolerance to progressive fiber supplementation was good with breath hydrogen and methane evidence (P = 0.008 and P < 0.0001, respectively) of increased fermentation with no exacerbation of abdominal symptoms and resolution of diarrhea in 2 of 4 patients. In group 2 before supplementation, fecal microbiota mass and their metabolites, SCFA, were dramatically lower in patients compared to healthy volunteers. From qPCR and HITChip analyses we calculated that there was a 97% reduction in the predominant potential butyrate producers and starch degraders. Following 2-5 wk of fiber supplementation there was a significant increase in fecal SCFA (acetate 28.4 ± 4.1 μmol/g to 42.5 ± 3.1 μmol/g dry weight, P = 0.01; propionate 1.6 ± 0.5 *vs* 6.22 ± 1.1, P = 0.006 and butyrate 2.5 ± 0.6 *vs* 5.9 ± 1.1, P = 0.04) and microbial counts of specific butyrate producers, with resolution of diarrhea in 3 of 4 patients.

CONCLUSION: Conventional management of critically ill patients, which includes the use of elemental diets and broad-spectrum antibiotics, was associated with gross suppression of the colonic microbiota and their production of essential colonic fuels, i.e., SCFA. Our investigations show that fiber supplementation of the feeds has the potential to improve microbiota mass and function, thereby reducing the risks of diarrhea due to dysbiosis.

Key words: Critical illness; Acute pancreatitis; Microbiota; Enteral nutrition; Fiber

Peer reviewer: Maxim S Petrov, Dr., Department of Surgery, The University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland 1142, New Zealand

O'Keefe SJD, Ou J, DeLany JP, Curry S, Zoetendal E, Gaskins HR, Gunn S. Effect of fiber supplementation on the microbiota in critically ill patients. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 138-145 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/138.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.138

INTRODUCTION

Diarrhea is a frequent complication in critically ill patients and often results in interruption of feeding and exacerbation of malnutrition when it is associated with tube feeding. For example, we recently reported our experience with acute pancreatitis where 43% of tube-fed patients developed persistent diarrhea[1,2]. Whilst diarrhea in tube-fed patients was previously attributed to feed-intolerance and malabsorption by the small intestine, it has become increasingly recognized that the major cause is antibiotic disturbance of the microbiota, termed "antibiotic-associated diarrhea" or "dysbiosis"[3-5]. This disturbance may precipitate diarrhea by at least two mechanisms: by suppressing fermentation and reducing the production of the primary energy source and epithelial regulator of the colonic mucosa - the short chain fatty acid (SCFA), butyrate, and by permitting the overgrowth of pathogens. Perhaps the best recognized example of the second mechanism is *Clostridium difficile* (*C. difficile*) infection. In our clinical study mentioned above, 50% of the cases of diarrhea were associated with *C. difficile* infections[2]. The emergence of *C. difficile* as a notorious "superbug" responsible for epidemics of hospital-acquired infections worldwide has attracted major media concern (e.g., "Stomach Bug Crystallizes an Antibiotic Threat", New York Times, April 13, 2009). There is good evidence that *C. difficile* infection is a consequence of dysbiosis as it thrives in a "permissive" environment[4,5] devoid of butyrate[6], indeed its presence may be a biomarker of the severity of the dysbiosis.

We recently hypothesized that current intensive care unit (ICU) management which invariably includes broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy, proton pump inhibitors (PPI) and elemental tube feeds, forms an ideal environment for the proliferation of *C. difficile* infection[7]. We are concerned that research into enteral nutrition has focused on the needs of the upper gastrointestinal (GI) tract with the development of specialized feeds that enhance enterocyte function but starve the colon as they are fully absorbed in the small intestine (i.e. non-residual, elemental). "Topical" nutrition is essential for health in not only the small intestine, but also the large, where undigested complex carbohydrates support microbiota health and balance, which in turn produce SCFAs and butyrate, which maintain mucosal function and health. As there is good evidence that fiber supplementation of tube feeds can reduce diarrhea in critically ill septic patients in the ICU receiving antibiotics[8] and in patients receiving enteral nutrition for severe acute pancreatitis[9,10], we conducted the following study to (1) test tolerance to progressive fiber supplementation; and (2) examine the effect this had on the microbiota and their production of SCFAs in critically ill patients, predominantly with acute pancreatitis, needing enteral feeding.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design

The study was divided into 2 parts. In the first group of critically ill patients (group 1), short-term (3-9 d) clinical tolerance and colonic fermentation responses to progressive fiber supplementation of their elemental tube feeds was measured. In the second part, a smaller number of "high-risk" severely ill ventilated patients, all dependent on jejunal feeding and all with diarrhea (group 2), were followed for a longer period of time (2-5 wk) to assess not only tolerance but also the associated changes in microbiota composition. Results were evaluated by comparison to age and sex-matched healthy volunteers consuming a normal diet.

Patient selection: Adult critically ill ICU patients referred to our nutrition support service with impaired gastric emptying for jejunal feeding with semi-elemental diets were selected. Patients were only included if it was estimated that they would need long term feeding, i.e. more than 2 wk. As reflected by our practice, most of the patients needed jejunal feeding for acute pancreatitis complicated by cystic swelling or necrosis, causing gastro-duodenal compression. Details of our nutritional management of this group of patients with a double-lumen gastric decompression and jejunal feeding tube has recently been published[11-13].

Controls: To evaluate the fermentation responses to fiber and fecal microbiota composition, 5 age-matched healthy subjects, body mass index range 23-27 kg/m^2, served as controls. Breath hydrogen responses to drinks containing 10 g of soluble fiber were measured hourly for 6 h following the drink. Fresh morning stool samples were obtained from the same individuals consuming normal food for characterization of the microbiota composition and activity. For fecal SCFA concentrations, we used our recently published data from twenty-three 50-65-year-old healthy male and female Americans also consuming a normal diet[14].

Enteral feeding: Jejunal feeding was commenced and managed as previously described[11]. Transnasal endosco-

py (Olympus 5.8 mm diameter upper GI endoscope) was used to access the jejunum to place a guide wire down the jejunum, permitting tube placement after withdrawal of the endoscope[12]. A double-lumen nasogastric decompression-jejunal feeding tube was used in all cases (Kangaroo-Dobbhoff tube system, Sherwood Medical Co., St Louis, MI; 16 Fr outer gastric tube, 9 Fr internal jejunal feeding tube). Feeding was commenced using a semi-elemental formula diet (Peptamen AF, Nestle Nutrition, NJ, United States, which contains 4 g soluble fiber (as oligofructose and inulin) per liter at 25 mL/h for 24 h, then increased to 50 mL/h for day 2, and then to goal calculated as the volume needed to deliver 1.5 g protein/kg ideal body weight/day. It is important to note that the recommended intake of fiber for Americans is 25 g/d for women and 38 g/d for men[15].

Fiber supplementation: In both groups, fiber supplementation was only commenced after goal enteral nutrition infusion rates had been achieved. In group 1, baseline breath responses to conventional tube feeding were measured at hourly intervals during the day (roughly 9 am to 5 pm) before fiber supplementation. On the following day, the response to bolus injection of 10 g of the fiber supplement (Benefiber, Novartis, United States, a wheat dextrin, dissolved in 25 mL water) down the jejunal tube was measured at hourly intervals for 6 h. Progressive fiber supplementation of the tube feeds was then commenced at 4 g tid, increasing after successive 3-d periods with tolerance to 8 g tid and up to a maximum of 12 g tid if diarrhea continued. Tolerance was assessed clinically with particular attention to abdominal distress, namely nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal distention, gas and pain. Ventilated patients were assessed by abdominal examination for pain and gaseous distention and diarrhea. Diarrhea was defined by our own practice protocol as the passage of more than 3 liquid stools > 500 mL/d; severe diarrhea was defined as the passage of > 1000 mL/d. Fermentation was monitored by daily measurement of breath hydrogen and methane at hourly intervals between 9 am and 5 pm. Fermentation was also assessed by measurement of fecal SCFA concentrations before and on the last day of fiber supplementation. In group 2, progressive fiber supplementation was given in a similar way but for a longer duration (2-5 wk) and as a more physiological continuous infusion piggy-backed into the jejunal feeding tube.

Sample collection

Most fecal samples, and in particular those collected from ventilated patients, were obtained from rectal tubes. Samples were contained in 10 g airtight sterile containers and frozen at -80℃ immediately after defecation. End expiratory breath was sampled and analyzed as previously[16].

Microbiota analysis

The microbiota was assessed in all patients in group 2 before and after fiber supplementation by estimating counts of total and specific bacteria by real time quantitative polymerase chain reaction (qPCR) of the 16S ribosomal RNA gene using Bacteria domain primers (broad primers Uni331F and Uin797R)[17] and Bifidobacteria (primers Bif164F, Bif662R) (Sigma Aldrich, CA). All PCR experiments were done in triplicate with a reaction volume of 10 μL using MicroAmp optical 384-well reaction plates. Following amplification, a dissociation step was included to analyze the melting profile of the amplified products. Ten-fold dilution series of the plasmid standard for the respective bacterial group or species was run along with the samples. Quantification of unknowns was made by using standard curves obtained from the amplification profile of known concentrations of the plasmid DNA containing the respective amplicon for each set of primers. Data were analyzed with SDS v2.3 software supplied by Applied Biosystems.

In 2 patients and 2 of the controls (1 male, 1 female), full analysis of microbial composition was determined by phylogenetic microarray using the Human Intestinal Tract Chip (HITChip) at Wageningen University in The Netherlands. This provides information on the proportional composition on over 1100 intestinal bacterial phylotypes[18]. Proportions were converted to counts by measuring counts of total bacteria in fecal samples as above. Confirmation of these calculations was made by also measuring counts of specific bacterial taxa by qPCR. SCFA were measured in duplicate samples as previously described[14] by gas chromatography (Agilent Technologies 6890N Network GC System with flame-ionization detection).

Statistical analysis

Baseline values from patients were evaluated employing computer software (SPSS 17 for Windows) by comparison to healthy controls by Student's unpaired *t* test if normally distributed and by Mann-Whitney *U* test if not. Changes after supplementation were evaluated by Students paired *t* test or Wilcoxon Rank Sum test as appropriate.

RESULTS

Patients

Thirteen patients were enrolled, 9 in group 1 and 4 in group 2. Demographic details are summarized in Table 1. The majority needed jejunal feeding for the management of complicated severe necrotizing pancreatitis and organ failure (all with Apache II scores > 20) where gastric feeding was impossible because of gastro-duodenal compression by the inflammatory mass, and distal elemental diet feeding was appropriate to maintain gut function without pancreatic stimulation[19,20]. One patient had multiple traumas due to a motor vehicle accident and another was started on tube feeding for *C. difficile* colitis and gastroparesis. All but one were commenced on fiber supplementation within the first week of commencement of feeding. All but 3 patients were receiving prophylac-

Table 1 Demographic details of the patients studied, with outline of medications received and outcome

Patient	Diagnosis	Age (yr)	Sex	BMI (kg/m^2)	Duration of fiber suppl (d)	Maximum fiber (g/d)	Medications, gastrointestinal symptoms before feeding, outcome
Group 1: bolus injections: short term							
1	Trauma	59	M	34.7	3	15	Metronidazole, lanzoprazole, diarrhea, d/c to snf
2	SAP	65	M	38.0	8	29	Cefepime, lanzoprazole, diarrhea, discharge home
3	SAP	85	F	31.0	3	24	Omeprazole, diarrhea, discharge home
4	SAP	89	F	29.4	6	32	Fluconazole, lanzoprazole, transfer rehab
5	SAP	43	M	34.7	9	12	Fluconazole, vancomycin, pantoprazole, discharge home
6	SAP	34	M	44.8	3	18	Ertapenem, omeprazole, diarrhea, d/c to snf
7	SAP	81	F	35.5	3	15	Omeprazole, discharge home
8	SAP	62	M	27.0	7	22	Famotidine, metronidazolel, discharge home
9	SAP	56	M	28.7	6	24	Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, voriconazole, pantoprazole, discharge home
Group 2: continuous infusions: long term							
10	SAP	88	F	30.3	19	35	Metronidazole, aztreonam, famotidine, diarrhea transfer to snf
11	SAP	65	F	27.6	36	36	Piperacillin-tazobactam, doripenem, metronidazole, pantoprazole, cefuroxime, diarrhea, distension, pain. d/c to snf
12	SAP	47	F	31.0	33	18	Piperacillin-tazobactam, pantoprazole, fluconazole, metronidazole, vancomycin, diarrhea, distention, d/c to snf
13	Chronic sepsis C diff	79	F	34.9	23	24	Metronidazole, vancomycin, lanzoprazole, diarrhea, distension, pain. *Clostridium difficile*. d/c to snf

SAP: Severe acute pancreatitis; d/c: Discharge; snf: Skilled nursing facility; BMI: Body mass index.

tic broad-spectrum antibiotics during the fermentation measurements. All but 2 were also receiving acid suppressants, 9 on PPI and 2 on H-2 antagonists. Six made an otherwise uneventful recovery, were weaned back onto a normal diet and discharged home, but 7 continued to need tube feeding due to continued gastric outlet compression, and were transferred once in a stable condition to a rehabilitation unit or specialized nursing facility.

Group 1

Tolerance: Tolerance to bolus fiber supplementation overall was good, with a median supplementation rate of 22 g/d, range 12-32 g/d. For the 5 who had no diarrhea before commencement of supplementation, supplementation rates of 15-32 g/d were tolerated without the induction of GI symptoms. In the 4 patients who had diarrhea at commencement of fiber supplementation, 2 improved with supplementation of 18 and 24 g/d and 2 remained unchanged with supplementation of 15 and 29 g/d. Gas was not a complaint and increasing abdominal distension was not detected clinically.

Fermentation: Figure 1 shows a comparison between the normal breath hydrogen responses to consumption of 10 g soluble fiber in the 5 healthy volunteers and the 9 patients in group 1 at the commencement of bolus supplementation. The normal increase in breath hydrogen over 6 h was not seen, chiefly because initial hydrogen concentrations were very high in 2 subjects (186 and 113 ppm), suggesting premature fermentation of tube feeds and soluble fiber by bacterial overgrowth of the small intestine[21].

Figure 2 summarizes the fecal SCFA results of the responses to maximal fiber supplementation in group 1. Although the group mean fecal SCFA concentrations

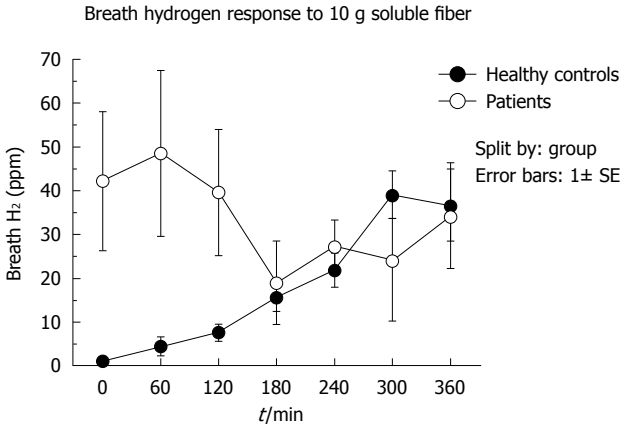


Figure 1 Comparison of breath hydrogen responses over 360 min to a bolus of 10 g soluble fiber between group 1 and healthy subjects.

increased after supplementation, the individual changes were variable and therefore not statistically significant. Both breath hydrogen and breath methane increased significantly ($P = 0.008$ and $P < 0.0001$ respectively).

Group 2

Effects of 2-5 wk fiber supplementation: All 4 of these patients had diarrhea at commencement of supplementation. In 3, the diarrhea improved with progressive supplementation to 18, 24, and 35 g/d. In the fourth patient (No. 11), with severe acute necrotizing pancreatitis, the diarrhea continued despite progressive supplementation to 36 g/d. This patient differed from the others as she continued to need broad-spectrum IV antibiotics (cefuroxime) and PPI (pantoprazole) for suspected sepsis and high gastric juice drainage in contrast to 2 of the other patients (No. 10 and No. 13) who were weaned off

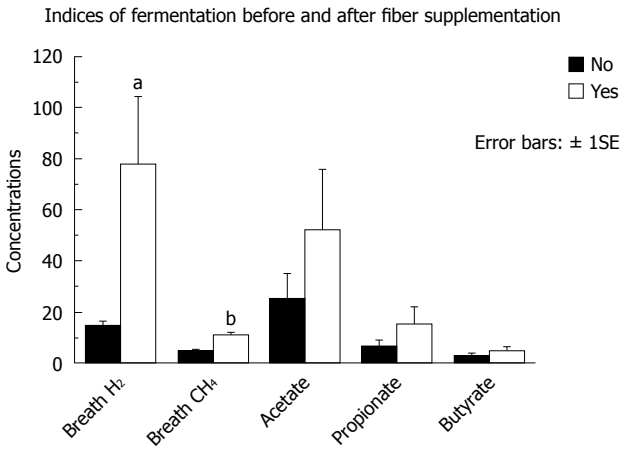


Figure 2 Summary of the changes in some of the indices of bacterial fermentation observed in the first group of 9 tube fed critically ill patients (group 1) after achievement of maximal fiber supplementation (median 22 g/d, range 12-32 g/d). $^{a}P = 0.008$, $^{b}P < 0.0001$, unpaired Student's *t* test.

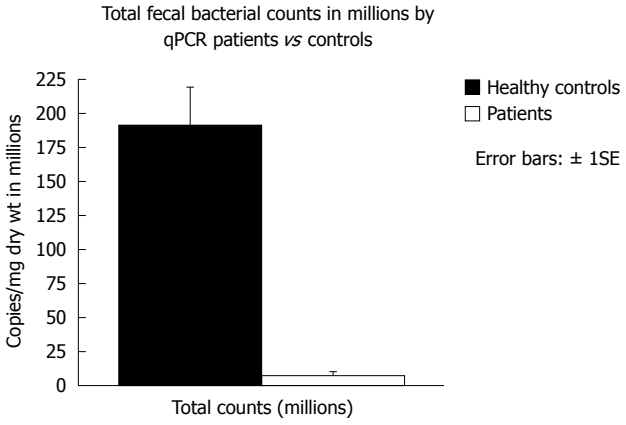


Figure 3 Comparison of total fecal bacterial copies in group 2 compared to healthy subjects consuming normal food measured by quantitative polymerase chain reaction of the 16S ribosomal RNA gene using Bacteria domain primers. qPCR: Quantitative polymerase chain reaction.

antibiotics and PPI before the end of the study. The third patient (No. 12), whose diarrhea settled on 18 g/d fiber supplementation, was still on IV vancomycin after diarrhea resolution.

Fecal microbiota and SCFAs: Figure 3 shows that total fecal bacterial counts estimated by qPCR were orders of magnitude lower in the 4 patients compared to healthy controls. Commensurate with this, fecal SCFA were also significantly lower in patients (Figure 4). Composition analysis by HITChip in 2 of the 4 patients (No. 10 and No. 11) and 2 healthy controls showed that the composition of the remaining microbiota was also different (Figure 5). The difference in Bacteroidetes composition was striking, with this phylum making up 35% of the microbiota in healthy subjects and 60% in patients. Conversely, there was a reduction of the proportion of Firmicutes, which contain the major butyrate-producers, in patients (50%) compared to controls (30%). Converting the proportions of phyla to numbers by combining the qPCR and HITChip

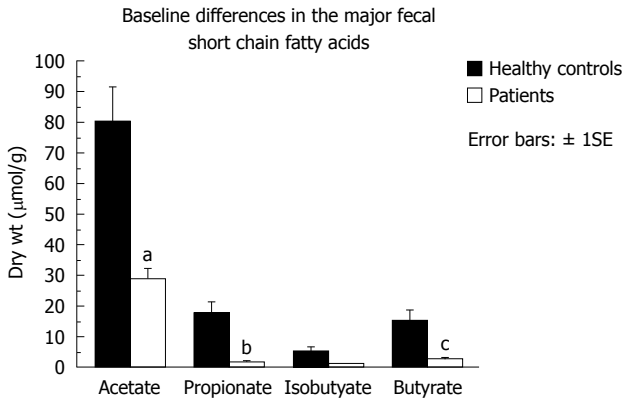


Figure 4 Fecal short chain fatty acid concentrations were significantly lower in the 4 patients in group 2 given fiber supplementation for longer periods of time (2-5 wk) compared to healthy subjects. $^{a}P = 0.012$, $^{b}P = 0.007$, $^{c}P = 0.35$, unpaired Student's *t* test.

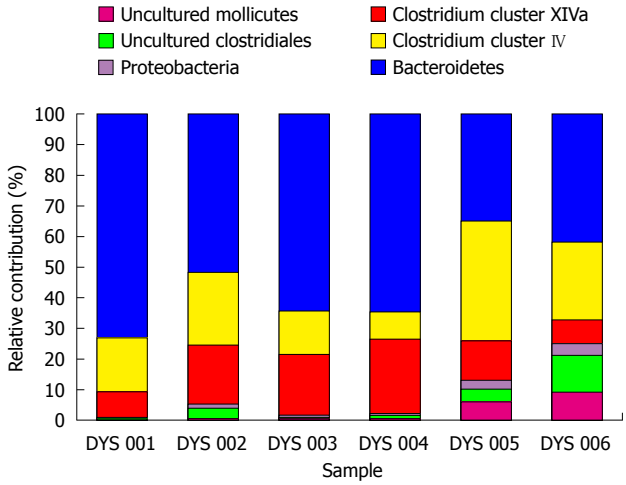


Figure 5 Phylogenetic distribution at level 1 ("Phylum/Class" level) by HITChip analysis. Lentispaerea is the spike. This illustrates differences in the composition of the major phyla between 2 patients from Group 2 before and after fiber supplementation (DYS 001 and DYS 002 = patient No. 10 before and after fiber supplementation, DYS 003 and DYS 004 = patient No. 11 before and after fiber supplementation) and 2 of the healthy controls consuming normal food (DYS 005 and DYS 006). The difference in *Bacteroidetes* composition was striking, with this phylum making up 35% of the microbiota in healthy subjects and 60% in patients. Conversely, there was a reduction of the proportion of *Firmicutes* (*Clostridium* clusters IV and XIVa), which contain the major butyrate-producers, in patients (50%) compared to controls (30%).

analyses, we calculate that there was a 97% reduction in the predominant potential butyrate producers and starch degraders, at the genus level, from *Clostridia* clusters XIVa [*Eubacterium rectale* (*E. rectale*), *Roseburia intestinalis* (*R. intestinalis*)] and IV [*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* (*F. prausnitzii*), *Ruminococcus bromii* (*R. bromii*) and *Ruminococcus obeum* (*R. obeum*)] before fiber supplementation. Taken together with the lower fecal SCFA concentrations, this demonstrates a general suppression of colonic fermentation.

Following 2-5 wk fiber supplementation in group 2, there was a 6-fold increase in Firmicutes accompanied by a significant increase in fecal SCFA (acetate 28.4 ± 4.1 μmol/g to 42.5 ±3.1 μmol/g dry weight, $P = 0.01$; pro-

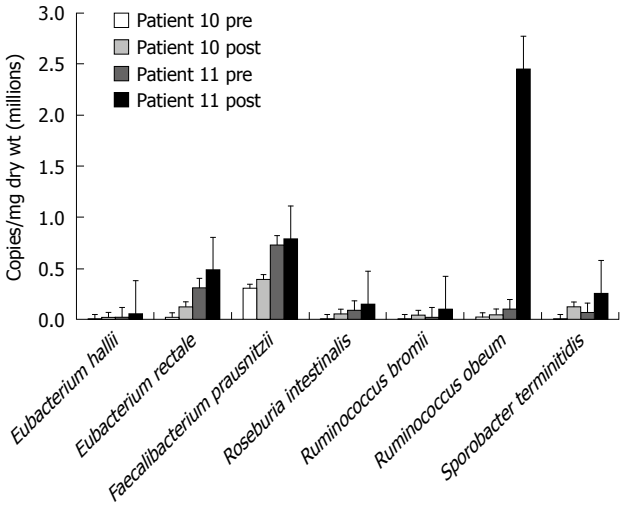


Figure 6 Numbers of butyrate-producing and fiber-digesting bacteria based on HITChip phylogenetic microarray analysis of microbiota composition and *16S* quantitative polymerase chain reaction of total fecal bacterial counts in two critically ill patients showing a general increase before and after 2-5 wk of fiber supplementation.

pionate 1.6 ± 0.5 *vs* 6.22 ± 1.1, $P = 0.006$; and butyrate 2.5 ± 0.6 *vs* 5.9±1.1, $P = 0.04$), indicating an increase in carbohydrate fermentation. The responses of a select number of bacteria known to maintain colonic mucosal health are illustrated in Figure 6. In general, all of these bacteria increased in numbers after supplementation, more so in patient 11 than in patient 10 - which might be explained by the fact that patient 10 was still receiving antibiotics during the repeat measurement during fiber supplementation. Specifically, microbial counts increased with fiber supplementation in the major potential butyrate producers, *E. rectale, E. hallii* and *R. intestinalis*, all members of Clostridia cluster XIVa. There were similar increases in *R. bromii, R. obeum* and in *Sporobacter terminitidis*, organisms that degrade starch and other complex carbohydrates. *F. prausnitzii* counts also increased in both patients. This bacterium is not only involved in starch degradation but may also have a specific role in preventing colitis[22]. The "probiotic" genus, Bifidobacterium spp. also increased towards normal (1.5×10^5 to 5.9×10^5, control 8.4×10^5 by qPCR).

DISCUSSION

The present data demonstrate that, in the patient population studied, progressive supplementation of elemental formula diets with up to 35 g soluble fiber per day fed into the jejunum was well tolerated, with no increase in abdominal symptoms and resolution of diarrhea in 5 of 8 patients. Secondly, detailed investigation in a few of these subjects fed for 3-5 wk revealed that initial fecal bacterial counts were dramatically reduced compared to healthy volunteers and that fiber supplementation increased the proportions and counts of recognized butyrate-producers as well as fecal butyrate concentrations. However, it was important to note that levels remained lower than normal, possibly because of the effects of concomitant antibiotic therapy. We acknowledge that our microbiota findings must be considered provisional, as the few patients we studied - because of cost of analysis - may not be representative of all ICU patients. Nonetheless, it is very likely that the widespread use of antibiotics and fiber-deficient diets have a devastating effect on microbiota composition and function placing patients at high risk of diarrheal disease.

Most of the patients studied were dependent on jejunal tube feeding because of complications of severe acute pancreatitis as this population reflects the bulk of our nutritional support practice commonly needing prolonged ICU support and tube feeding[1,2]. The results demonstrate that nearly all were managed with broad-spectrum antibiotics and acid suppressants, all received low residue semi-elemental tube feeds and most (8/11) had diarrhea when first studied. In a systematic review of the literature, Petrov and Whelan identified only 5 suitable randomized controlled trials (RCT) comparing the frequency of diarrhea in enteral and parenterally fed patients with acute pancreatitis[9]. Diarrhea was significantly higher in enterally fed patients: 29% *vs* 7%; but this difference is to be expected if the gut is not being used. There is only one RCT evaluating the value of fiber supplementation of the enteral feeds, that of Karakan *et al*[10] who randomized 30 patients with severe acute pancreatitis (mean Apache Ⅱ score of 9.4-9.6) to supplementation with 24 g/d of soluble (0.7 g/100 mL) and insoluble fiber (0.8 g/100 mL). Remarkably, supplementation was associated with a significant reduction in hospital stay, duration of nutrition therapy, acute phase response and overall complications.

The maintenance of microbiotal balance is pivotal for colonic health as they provide essential nutrients for the colonic mucosa[23]. Ever since Roediger[24] first identified butyrate as the preferred energy substrate for colonocytes and Harig *et al*[25] showed that depletion of colonic SCFA lead to the development of acute colitis ("diversion colitis"), there has been intense, but chiefly experimental, research into the importance of SCFA synthesis in the maintenance of colonic health. We have recently reviewed some of the more recent evidence, which indicates that sufficient colonic butyrate is essential for the maintenance of cellular homeostasis and a normal colonocyte phenotype; that SCFA have anti-inflammatory effects, either directly by regulating the release of prostaglandin E2, cytokines and chemokines from human immune cells, or indirectly by their ability to support the growth of probiotic species, such as Bifidobacteria and Lactobacilli; that SCFA also possess immune-modulating and anti-inflammatory actions by binding certain G-coupled receptors, which may stimulate the normal resolution of inflammatory responses in colonocytes; and finally, that SCFA production enhances colonic blood flow as well as fluid and electrolyte uptake[26].

However, butyrate production is not the only essential function of the microbiota. Water-soluble vitamins, such as folate, biotin, B-12, are also synthesized and utilized by

the mucosa[22] and different microbial species support each other with cross-feeding, thus maintaining a disciplined society preventing overgrowth with pathogens such as *C. difficile*. For example, starch degraders such as *R. bromii* and *Bifidobacterium adolescentis* cross-feed to produce acetate, which is the major energy source for the major butyrate-producers *E. rectale*, *Roseburia* spp. and *F. prausnitzii*[27]. Bifidobacteria also process starch and soluble fiber into lactate, which is released into the lumen and fuels other butyrate-producers such as *E. hallii*[27]. Furthermore, the lactate reduces the luminal pH, favoring the growth of butyrate-producers and suppressing pathogens. The real-life situation is likely far more complex than we currently recognize, bearing in mind that the microbial population outnumbers our own cells by 10:1 and that their genetic library outnumbers ours by 100:1[28]. For example, specific bacteria may secrete specific anti-inflammatory substances as illustrated by Sokol *et al*[22], with the observation that *F. prausnitzii* exhibits anti-inflammatory effects on cellular and TNBS colitis models, partly due to secreted metabolites able to block nuclear factor κB activation and interleukin-8 production.

Although we did not directly measure microbial activity in the small intestine, we performed soluble fiber-breath tests, which provide indirect information on the distribution of fermenters in the small and large intestine. The high baseline and early increase in breath hydrogen levels after injection of soluble fiber into the jejunum shown in Figure 1, is characteristic of small bowel bacterial overgrowth, as the tube feed and fiber is fermented before it can be absorbed in the small intestine or fermented in the colon. The most likely explanation for bacterial overgrowth of the small intestine is the virtual routine use of PPI in critically ill patients. Earlier studies of ours, in 20 patients with peptic ulcer disease before and after PPI therapy (omeprazole 20 mg/d), showed that duodenal bacterial counts increased in all patients following treatment, geometric mean counts increasing from 330 CFU/mL to 95 000 CFU/mL, and that this was accompanied by an increase in intestinal transit and diarrhea[21].

Our investigations raise serious concern that the normal microbiota balance within us is grossly disturbed in critically ill patients managed with semi-elemental tube feeds, acid suppressants and antibiotics. Not only are the microbiota killed or suppressed by broad-spectrum antibiotics, but the remaining colonies are starved by the use of non-residue diets. This combination inevitably leads to dysbiosis and increased risk of colitis and diarrhea. Further studies are needed to separate out the relative risks due to antibiotics and colonic starvation and to determine whether the incremental improvement in microbial growth and function with fiber supplementation will be sufficient to counteract the effects of antibiotic therapy. At the same time, the use of unproven antibiotic (as in patients with acute pancreatitis[29]) and PPI prophylaxis[30-32] should be withheld, or modified, so that it spares colonic health-promoting bacteria, as in the case of the new anti-*C. difficile* drug, fidaxomicin[33].

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Hans Heilig (Zoetendal lab, Wageningen) and Mei Wang, PhD (Gaskins lab, UIUC) for technical assistance with the HITChip and qPCR analysis of the fecal samples, respectively.

COMMENTS

Background

Diarrhea is a common problem in critically ill patients dependent on tube feeding for prolonged periods. There is concern that the diarrhea results from the combined use of elemental formulae diets which deprive the colonic microbiota of their nutrition, which in turn reduce the production of short chain fatty acids (SCFAs) which maintain the health of the colonic mucosa, and the regular use of broad spectrum antibiotics which further suppress microbial fermentation.

Research frontiers

Preservation of colonic microbiota composition and function is likely to reduce the morbidity associated with conventional intensive care unit (ICU) management.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The studies have demonstrated that progressive supplementation of jejunal tube-feeds with soluble fiber is well tolerated by critically ill patients, increasing colonic fermentation and reducing diarrhea. High throughput technology was employed to investigate the nature of the underlying dysbiosis. First, a phylogenetic microarray using the Human Intestinal Tract Chip provided information on the proportional composition on over 1100 intestinal bacterial phylotypes. Second, proportions within the microbiota composition were converted to counts by measurement of the total bacterial counts in fecal samples by quantitative polymerase chain reaction analysis.

Applications

The results indicate that patients dependent on semi-elemental diets for any length of time should be given regular fiber supplementation to maintain colonic health and function.

Terminology

Fiber is a complex carbohydrate that is indigestible by small intestinal enzymes but fermentable by colonic microbes to form SCFAs, which are the primary energy source and epithelial regulators for the colonic mucosa.

Peer review

This is a unique study examining the interactions between the conventional ICU management, including semi-elemental diets and antibiotics, and the composition and function of the colonic microbiota.

REFERENCES

1 **Rolniak S**, Raina A, Hegazi R, Centa-Wagner PK, Kandil HM, Hughes SJ, Lee KK, James A, Moser J, Graham TO, O'Keefe SJ. Simultaneous nasogastric decompression with mid-jejunal feeding avoids total parenteral nutrition (TPN) and early surgery in the management of complicated acute pancreatitis and gastric outlet obstruction. *Gastroenterology* 2009; **136**: A-76

2 **Rolniak S**, Centa-Wagner P, Kandil H, Graham T, O'Keefe S. A year's experience with mid-jejunal enteral feeding in patients with acute pancreatitis and gastric outlet obstruction. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 2010; **34**: 182A

3 **Young VB**, Schmidt TM. Antibiotic-associated diarrhea accompanied by large-scale alterations in the composition of the fecal microbiota. *J Clin Microbiol* 2004; **42**: 1203-1206

4 **De La Cochetière MF**, Durand T, Lalande V, Petit JC, Potel G, Beaugerie L. Effect of antibiotic therapy on human fecal microbiota and the relation to the development of Clostridium difficile. *Microb Ecol* 2008; **56**: 395-402

5 **Chang JY**, Antonopoulos DA, Kalra A, Tonelli A, Khalife WT, Schmidt TM, Young VB. Decreased diversity of the fecal Microbiome in recurrent Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhea. *J Infect Dis* 2008; **197**: 435-438

6 **May T**, Mackie RI, Fahey GC, Cremin JC, Garleb KA. Effect

of fiber source on short-chain fatty acid production and on the growth and toxin production by Clostridium difficile. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29**: 916-922

7 **O'Keefe SJ**. Tube feeding, the microbiota, and Clostridium difficile infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 139-142

8 **Spapen H**, Diltoer M, Van Malderen C, Opdenacker G, Suys E, Huyghens L. Soluble fiber reduces the incidence of diarrhea in septic patients receiving total enteral nutrition: a prospective, double-blind, randomized, and controlled trial. *Clin Nutr* 2001; **20**: 301-305

9 **Petrov MS**, Whelan K. Comparison of complications attributable to enteral and parenteral nutrition in predicted severe acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Br J Nutr* 2010; **103**: 1287-1295

10 **Karakan T**, Ergun M, Dogan I, Cindoruk M, Unal S. Comparison of early enteral nutrition in severe acute pancreatitis with prebiotic fiber supplementation versus standard enteral solution: a prospective randomized double-blind study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 2733-2737

11 **O'Keefe SJ**. A guide to enteral access procedures and enteral nutrition. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **6**: 207-215

12 **O'Keefe SJ**, Foody W, Gill S. Transnasal endoscopic placement of feeding tubes in the intensive care unit. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* 2003; **27**: 349-354

13 **O'Keefe SJD**, Rolniak S, Raina A, Graham T, Hegazi R, Center-Wagner P. Enteral feeding patients with gastric outlet obstruction. *Nutr Clin Pract* 2011; In press

14 **O'Keefe SJ**, Ou J, Aufreiter S, O'Connor D, Sharma S, Sepulveda J, Fukuwatari T, Shibata K, Mawhinney T. Products of the colonic microbiota mediate the effects of diet on colon cancer risk. *J Nutr* 2009; **139**: 2044-2048

15 **Institute of Medicine, Food, and Nutrition Board**. Dietary Reference Intakes. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 2002

16 **O'Keefe SJ**, Chung D, Mahmoud N, Sepulveda AR, Manafe M, Arch J, Adada H, van der Merwe T. Why do African Americans get more colon cancer than Native Africans? *J Nutr* 2007; **137**: 175S-182S

17 **Yu Z**, Morrison M. Improved extraction of PCR-quality community DNA from digesta and fecal samples. *Biotechniques* 2004; **36**: 808-812

18 **Rajilić-Stojanović M**, Heilig HG, Molenaar D, Kajander K, Surakka A, Smidt H, de Vos WM. Development and application of the human intestinal tract chip, a phylogenetic microarray: analysis of universally conserved phylotypes in the abundant microbiota of young and elderly adults. *Environ Microbiol* 2009; **11**: 1736-1751

19 **Kaushik N**, Pietraszewski M, Holst JJ, O'Keefe SJ. Enteral feeding without pancreatic stimulation. *Pancreas* 2005; **31**: 353-359

20 **O'Keefe SJD**. Jejunal feeding is the best approach to early enteral feeding in patients with acute pancreatitis. *AGA Perspectives* 2006; **2**: 5-19

21 **Lewis SJ**, Franco S, Young G, O'Keefe SJ. Altered bowel function and duodenal bacterial overgrowth in patients treated with omeprazole. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1996; **10**: 557-561

22 **Sokol H**, Pigneur B, Watterlot L, Lakhdari O, Bermúdez-Humarán LG, Gratadoux JJ, Blugeon S, Bridonneau C, Furet JP, Corthier G, Grangette C, Vasquez N, Pochart P, Trugnan G, Thomas G, Blottière HM, Doré J, Marteau P, Seksik P, Langella P. Faecalibacterium prausnitzii is an anti-inflammatory commensal bacterium identified by gut microbiota analysis of Crohn disease patients. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 16731-16736

23 **O'Keefe SJ**. Nutrition and colonic health: the critical role of the microbiota. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2008; **24**: 51-58

24 **Roediger WE**. Utilization of nutrients by isolated epithelial cells of the rat colon. *Gastroenterology* 1982; **83**: 424-429

25 **Harig JM**, Soergel KH, Komorowski RA, Wood CM. Treatment of diversion colitis with short-chain-fatty acid irrigation. *N Engl J Med* 1989; **320**: 23-28

26 **Greer JB**, O'Keefe SJ. Microbial induction of immunity, inflammation, and cancer. *Front Physiol* 2011; **1**: 168

27 **Flint HJ**, Duncan SH, Scott KP, Louis P. Interactions and competition within the microbial community of the human colon: links between diet and health. *Environ Microbiol* 2007; **9**: 1101-1111

28 **Ley RE**, Peterson DA, Gordon JI. Ecological and evolutionary forces shaping microbial diversity in the human intestine. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 837-848

29 **Jafri NS**, Mahid SS, Idstein SR, Hornung CA, Galandiuk S. Antibiotic prophylaxis is not protective in severe acute pancreatitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Surg* 2009; **197**: 806-813

30 **Cook DJ**, Reeve BK, Guyatt GH, Heyland DK, Griffith LE, Buckingham L, Tryba M. Stress ulcer prophylaxis in critically ill patients. Resolving discordant meta-analyses. *JAMA* 1996; **275**: 308-314

31 **Choudhry MN**, Soran H, Ziglam HM. Overuse and inappropriate prescribing of proton pump inhibitors in patients with Clostridium difficile-associated disease. *QJM* 2008; **101**: 445-448

32 **Cunningham R**, Dial S. Is over-use of proton pump inhibitors fuelling the current epidemic of Clostridium difficile-associated diarrhoea? *J Hosp Infect* 2008; **70**: 1-6

33 **Tannock GW**, Munro K, Taylor C, Lawley B, Young W, Byrne B, Emery J, Louie T. A new macrocyclic antibiotic, fidaxomicin (OPT-80), causes less alteration to the bowel microbiota of Clostridium difficile-infected patients than does vancomycin. *Microbiology* 2010; **156**: 3354-3359

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
doi:10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.146

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): 146-154
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Stimulation of oval cell and hepatocyte proliferation by exogenous bombesin and neurotensin in partially hepatectomized rats

Stelios F Assimakopoulos, Athanassios C Tsamandas, Ilias H Alexandris, Christos Georgiou, Constantine E Vagianos, Chrisoula D Scopa

Stelios F Assimakopoulos, Department of Internal Medicine, University Hospital of Patras, Patras 26504, Greece
Athanassios C Tsamandas, Chrisoula D Scopa, Department of Pathology, University Hospital of Patras, Patras 26504, Greece
Ilias H Alexandris, Department of Surgery, General Hospital of Amfissa, Amfissa 33100, Greece
Christos Georgiou, Department of Biology, Section of Genetics, Cell Biology and Development, University of Patras, Patras 26100, Greece
Constantine E Vagianos, 1st Department of Surgical, "Saint Panteleimon" General Hospital of Nikaia, Piraeus 18454, Greece
Author contributions: Assimakopoulos SF, Vagianos CE and Scopa CD contributed to the conception and design; Alexandris IH, Georgiou C and Tsamandas AC contributed to the acquisition of data; Tsamandas AC and Assimakopoulos SF analyzed and interrelated the data; Assimakopoulos SF drafted the manuscript; Vagianos CE and Scopa CD critically revised the manuscript; all the authors have read and approved the final version of the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Stelios F Assimakopoulos, MD, PhD, Department of Internal Medicine, University Hospital of Patras, Patras 26504, Greece. sassim@upatras.gr
Telephone: +30-2610-999583 Fax: +30-2610-993982
Received: September 26, 2011 Revised: November 7, 2011
Accepted: November 14, 2011
Published online: December 15, 2011

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the effect of the neuropeptides bombesin (BBS) and neurotensin (NT) on oval cell proliferation in partially hepatectomized rats not pretreated with a known hepatocyte inhibitor.

METHODS: Seventy male Wistar rats were randomly divided into five groups: Ⅰ = controls, Ⅱ = sham operated, Ⅲ = partial hepatectomy 70% (PHx), Ⅳ = PHx + BBS (30 μg/kg per day), Ⅴ = PHx + NT (300 μg/kg per day). Forty eight hours after liver resection, portal endotoxin levels and hepatic glutathione redox state were determined. α-fetoprotein (AFP) mRNA (*in situ* hybridisation), cytokeratin-19 and Ki67 antigen expression (immunohistochemistry) and apoptosis (TUNEL) were evaluated on liver tissue samples. Cells with morphological features of oval cells that were cytokeratin-19 (+) and AFP mRNA (+) were scored in morphometric analysis and their proliferation was recorded. In addition, the proliferation and apoptotic rates of hepatocytes were determined.

RESULTS: In the control and sham operated groups, oval cells were significantly less compared to groups Ⅲ, Ⅳ and Ⅴ ($P < 0.001$). The neuropeptides BBS and NT significantly increased the proliferation of oval cells compared to group Ⅲ ($P < 0.001$). In addition, BBS and NT induced a significant increase of hepatocyte proliferation ($P < 0.001$), whereas it decreased their apoptotic activity ($P < 0.001$) compared to group Ⅲ. BBS and NT significantly decreased portal endotoxemia ($P < 0.001$) and increased the hepatic GSH: GSSG ratio ($P < 0.05$ and $P < 0.001$, respectively) compared to group Ⅲ.

CONCLUSION: BBS and NT stimulated oval cell proliferation in a model of liver regeneration, without use of concomitant suppression of hepatocyte proliferation as oval cell activation stimuli, and improved the hepatocyte regenerative response. This peptides-induced combined stimulation of oval cell and hepatocyte proliferation might serve as a possible treatment modality for several liver diseases.

Key words: Liver regeneration; Partial hepatectomy; Hepatic progenitor cells; Oval cells; Apoptosis; Proliferation; Oxidative stress

Peer reviewer: Richard Hu, Professor, Department of Digestive Diseases, Olive View-UCLA Medical Center, 14445 Olive View Drive, Los Angeles, CA 91342, United States

Assimakopoulos SF, Tsamandas AC, Alexandris IH, Georgiou C, Vagianos CE, Scopa CD. Stimulation of oval cell and hepatocyte proliferation by exogenous bombesin and neurotensin in partially hepatectomized rats. *World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol* 2011; 2(6): 146-154 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/full/v2/i6/146.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.4291/wjgp.v2.i6.146

INTRODUCTION

The efficiency of the regenerative response of human liver is of major clinical importance for patients' outcome in a number of diverse clinical conditions. When liver damage occurs, it is always followed by regeneration of the organ, which is mainly mediated by proliferation of the non-damaged mature hepatocytes[1,2]. When proliferation of the mature hepatocytes is suppressed, the majority of regeneration is carried out by oval cells, which have the capacity to differentiate into biliary epithelial cells or hepatocytes replacing the lost liver parenchyma[2-5]. Rat oval cells are frequently referred to as equivalent to hepatic progenitor cells in humans[3].

The hepatocyte is the most efficient cell for liver repopulation after injury; however, oval cells participate, possibly as an amplifying transit compartment for hepatocyte differentiation, in processes in which hepatocytes do not respond quickly enough or are unable to respond to proliferative stimuli[6]. Therefore, improving the efficiency of the regenerative response of liver progenitor cells might have a substantial clinical impact, especially in cases of coexisting inhibition of mature hepatocyte proliferation, such as in viral hepatitis[7], chemical toxicity[8] and obstructive cholestasis[9]. For therapeutic application, a non-toxic activation of this stem cell compartment would have been required. Up until now, most experimental trials of pharmaceutical expansion of oval cell compartment have been conducted in models of mature hepatocyte proliferation inhibition[10-12]. Recent studies by our group have demonstrated that oval cells may also proliferate in a model of experimental liver cirrhosis, even in the absence of pretreatment with a known hepatocyte inhibitor[13].

Bombesin (BBS) and neurotensin (NT) are neuropeptides with a wide spectrum of actions on the gut-liver axis, influencing bile acid secretion, enterohepatic circulation, intestinal motility, blood flow, secretion, nutrient absorption and immune response[14-19]. These agents activate diverse intracellular signals in hepatocytes, including induction of mitogenic, antioxidant and metabolic responses[20-23], and confer protection against liver injury and oxidative stress[21,22,24,25]. In our previous studies, we have shown that these neuropeptides reduce hepatic oxidative stress after partial hepatectomy (PHx) and improve the regenerative response of the cholestatic liver in rats[24,26].

This study was undertaken to investigate the possible effectiveness of BBS and NT as a pharmacological intervention for induction of oval cell proliferation in a widely applied experimental model of liver regeneration (PHx) without pretreatment with a known hepatocyte inhibitor.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals

Seventy male albino Wistar rats, weighing 250-320 g, were used in the study. They were housed in stainless-steel cages, three rats per cage, under controlled temperature (23℃) and humidity conditions, with 12 h dark/light cycles, and maintained on standard laboratory diet with tap water ad libitum throughout the experiment, except for an overnight fast before surgery.

The experiments were carried out according to international standards on animal welfare (86/609/EEC) and to the guidelines of the Ethics Committee of Patras University Hospital. The study was approved by the local ethics committee.

Experimental design

Animals were divided randomly into five groups: group Ⅰ (n = 10): non-operated controls; group Ⅱ (n = 15): sham operated; group Ⅲ (n = 15): PHx (70%); group Ⅳ (n = 15): PHx and BBS administration; group Ⅴ (n = 15): PHx and NT administration.

Starting on day 0, the animals of groups Ⅳ and Ⅴ were treated daily with BBS (10 μg/kg, subcutaneously, three times a day) and NT (300 μg/kg, intraperitoneally, once a day) respectively, while the animals of groups Ⅰ, Ⅱ and Ⅲ were divided to receive daily either three subcutaneous or one intraperitoneal injection of 0.5 mL normal saline. Previous studies have shown that the route of saline administration does not affect the results[24]. On the 8th day, animals from groups Ⅲ, Ⅳ and Ⅴ underwent laparotomy and PHx (almost 70%) as described by Higgins and Andersson[27], while animals in group Ⅱ underwent laparotomy and mobilization of the liver. The abdominal incision was closed in two layers with chromic 4-0 cat gut and 4-0 silk. All surgical procedures were performed under strict sterile conditions, using light ether anesthesia. Administration of BBS, NT and normal saline was continued for 48 h after surgery. On the 10th day, all animals were operated (group Ⅰ) or reoperated on (groups Ⅱ, Ⅲ, Ⅳ and Ⅴ), again under strict sterile conditions. Samples were obtained according to the experimental protocol, after which the rats were sacrificed by exsanguination.

Peptides preparation

A stock solution of BBS (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, Missouri, United States) was prepared by first dissolving the amount of peptide needed for the study in 1 mL sterile water containing 0.1% (w/v) bovine serum albumin and then diluted with normal saline containing 1%

(w/v) bovine serum albumin to a concentration of 3.5 μg BBS/0.1 mL. This solution was divided into equal aliquots of 0.1 mL that were stored in plastic tubes at -20℃. At the time of administration, a volume corresponding to a dose of 10 μg BBS/kg body weight was taken from each aliquot and was further diluted with sterile saline to a final volume of 0.5 mL that was injected subcutaneously three times daily. Selection of dose and route of administration was based on previous reports[24].

A stock solution of NT (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, Missouri, United States) was prepared by first dissolving the amount of peptide needed for the study in 1 mL sterile water containing 0.1% (w/v) bovine serum albumin and then diluted with normal saline containing 0.1% (w/v) bovine serum albumin to a concentration of 100 μg NT/0.1 mL. This solution was divided into equal aliquots of 0.1 mL that were stored in glass vials at -20℃. At the time of administration, a volume corresponding to a dose of 300 μg NT/kg body weight was taken from each aliquot and was further diluted with sterile saline to a final volume of 0.5 mL that was injected intraperitoneally once daily. Selection of dose and route of administration was based on previous reports[24].

Portal endotoxin measurements

For the determination of endotoxin concentrations in the portal vein, a laparotomy was performed in all groups, the portal vein was punctured and samples of 1 mL of blood were obtained. Endotoxin concentration was determined by the Limulus Amebocyte Lysate test (LAL, QCL-1000, Lonza, Walkersville, MD, United States) according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Determination of glutathione redox state

After laparotomy, a tissue sample of the liver of each animal was excised, washed in 9 g/L of NaCl and homogenized in sodium phosphate buffer 10 mmol/L, pH = 7.2 (containing 1 mmol/L ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid and 1 mmol/L butylated hydroxyanisole in 0.15% ethanol) by liquid nitrogen for the determination of glutathione redox state. Reduced glutathione was determined spectrophotometrically using Elman's reagent (DTNB) and oxidized glutathione (GSSG) was quantitated by a standard enzymic assay, as described previously[24].

Pathological analysis

***In situ* hybridization for α-fetoprotein expression in paraffin sections:** For the detection of α-fetoprotein (AFP) mRNA (oval cell phenotype), a standard non-radioactive *in situ* hybridization method (ISH) was performed on paraffin sections, as described elsewhere[13]. The Hybridization/Detection Complete System (MBI, Rockville, MD) and the digoxigenin (DIG)-labeled riboprobe for AFP subunit-1 in a 10-fold dilution in hybridization solution were used. Paraffin sections of embryonic rat liver tissue were used as a positive control. To confirm that the positive stain was specific, the slides were processed in an identical way and hybridized with probes known to be complementary to sequences in the test sections (rat genomic DNA probes) (positive control probes). These probes (biotynilated oligonucleotide probes) were similar in length and GC content to AFP probe. For negative control purposes, the slides were processed in the same way but hybridized with heterologous probes. The latter were not complementary to any sequence in the test tissues. These negative control probes were similar in length and GC content to AFP probe.

Immunohistochemistry for the detection of CK19 and Ki67 proteins in paraffin sections: The detection of CK19 protein expression (oval cell phenotype)[5,13] and Ki67 expression (proliferation marker) relied on immunohistochemistry based on a streptavidin biotin peroxidase method (ImmunoCruz™ Staining systems sc-2053; Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Santa Cruz, CA). Briefly, 4-μm thick sections were dewaxed in xylene and hydrated through graded concentrations of alcohol. Endogenous peroxidase activity was blocked with 1% hydrogen peroxide for 15 min. Sections were then processed in a microwave oven twice for 5 min each time at high power, and subsequently stained with anti-CK19 [goat polyclonal (sc-33119) (Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Santa Cruz, CA) in a dilution of 1:150] and anti-Ki67 [goat polyclonal antibody (M-19) (sc-7846) (Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Santa Cruz, CA) in a dilution of 1:100]. All incubations were performed for 30 min at room temperature. Between the steps, sections were washed in TBS. Diaminobenzidine (Sigma Fast DAB tablets-D-4293, St Louis, MO) was used as the chromogen. Cytoplasmic staining for CK19 and nuclear staining for Ki67 were considered as positive. For negative control purposes, the same streptavidin-biotin technique was used on tissue sections in which 1% BSA in PBS was substituted for the primary antibody.

***In situ* labeling of fragmented DNA for the detection of apoptotic cells:** On paraffin sections, a standard terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT)-mediated deoxyuridine triphosphate (dUTP)-biotin nick-end labeling (TUNEL) method was employed to detect the fragmented nuclear DNA associated with apoptosis[9]. For this purpose, the *In Situ* Cell Death Detection Kit, POD (Roche, United States) was used according to the manufacturer's instructions. After standard deparaffinization, hydration, incubation with proteinase K and blocking of endogenous peroxidase, tissue sections were incubated: (1) with TdT and DIG-dUTP (TUNEL reaction mixture) at 37℃ for 60 min; and (2) with peroxidase converter anti-fluorescein antibody at 37℃ for 30 min. Diaminobenzidine (Sigma Fast DAB tablets, D-4293, Sigma St. Louis, MO, United States) was used as the chromogen. For physiological positive controls, sections of rat small intestine were subjected to the same procedure. For negative controls, some slides were incubated with label solution that did not contain TdT.

Morphometric analysis: (1) Oval cell measurement: morphometric analysis for the evaluation of oval cell

Table 1 Portal Endotoxin concentrations and hepatic glutathione redox state (mean ± SD)

Markers	Control (Ⅰ) (*n* = 10)	Sham (Ⅱ) (*n* = 15)	PHx (Ⅲ) (*n* = 15)	PHx + BBS (Ⅳ) (*n* = 15)	PHx + NT (Ⅴ) (*n* = 15)
Endotoxin (EU/mL)	0.41 ± 0.07	0.40 ± 0.10	2.45 ± 0.62[a]	1.36 ± 0.53[b]	1.59 ± 0.44[b]
GSH: GSSG	11.55 ± 3.40	12.02 ± 2.85	20.43 ± 4.64[a]	25.88 ± 5.27[c]	28.69 ± 5.94[b]

[a]$P < 0.001$ *vs* sham; [b]$P < 0.001$ *vs* partial hepatectomy (PHx); [c]$P < 0.05$ *vs* PHx. BBS: Bombesin; NT: Neurotensin. GSH: Reduced glutathione hormone; GSSG: Oxidized glutathione.

presence was performed as described previously[13]. Briefly, sections were screened at low power and areas with increased oval cell staining were determined. Cells were scored when they fulfilled the morphological criteria for oval cells (small cells with ovoid nuclei and scant cytoplasm) and expressed AFP mRNA, cytoplasmic protein CK19 and/or nuclear protein Ki67. Cell counts were performed manually at a × 400 magnification (high power field, HPF) using a 10 × 10-microscope grid. The number of oval cells was determined by visual inspection of five non-overlapping different fields per section. The variance in oval cell counts from section to section in the same biopsy was < 10%. The average of these scores was then taken; and (2) Evaluation of proliferation and apoptosis in hepatocytes: immunohistochemical results regarding Ki67 expression and ISH results (TUNEL+ cells) were estimated for hepatocytes. All $Ki67^+$ hepatocytes were considered proliferating cells. Regarding apoptosis, in order to avoid its overestimation by the TUNEL method, hepatocytes were considered apoptotic only if, in addition to positive TUNEL stain, they displayed the morphological features of apoptosis on light microscopy (cytoplasmic fragmentation and nuclear condensation) and were not "surrounded" by inflammatory elements. Estimation of proliferation and apoptosis in each case was performed by a stereological method. Specifically, sections from each liver biopsy were viewed through a light microscope with × 40 flat field objective. A square lattice of 100 points with a total surface area of 0.064 mm^2 was superimposed onto the tissue. Data were collected from a series of randomly selected 15 adjacent fields extending throughout the biopsy. For each field a percentage value for each parameter ($Ki67^+$ cells, apoptotic cells) was obtained by dividing the points falling on stained tissue by the total number of measured points. Also, for each field, the ratio of the obtained values (% $Ki67^+$ cells/% apoptotic cells) was calculated as a balancing index expressing net cell turnover. It should be noted that the variance in cell counts from field to field in the same section was < 10%. The average of these scores was then taken and expressed as proliferation and apoptotic indexes and proliferation/apoptosis ratio respectively for each case.

Statistical analysis

Data were analyzed using the SPSS statistical package (SPSS Inc., 2001, Release 11.0.0, United States). In groups Ⅰ, Ⅱ and Ⅲ, data obtained from subcutaneously and intraperitoneally saline-treated rats were pooled, as there was no significant difference between differentially injected animals for all parameters studied. Results are expressed as mean (SD). Comparisons among multiple groups were performed using the one-way ANOVA, followed by Bonferroni's post hoc test when variances across groups were equal or by Dunnette's T3 post hoc test when variances were not equal. Variance equality was tested by Levene statistical analysis. In all cases, differences were considered significant when $P < 0.05$.

RESULTS

Portal endotoxin concentration

Hepatectomized animals (group Ⅲ) presented significantly elevated endotoxin concentrations in portal blood compared with groups Ⅰ and Ⅱ ($P < 0.001$). Treatment with BBS or NT led to significantly lower endotoxin values in portal vein in groups Ⅳ and Ⅴ ($P < 0.001$ *vs* group Ⅲ, respectively) (Table 1).

Hepatic glutathione redox state

Evaluation of glutathione redox state showed significantly increased levels of reduced glutathione hormone (GSH):GSSG in hepatectomized rats of group Ⅲ ($P < 0.001$ *vs* groups Ⅰ and Ⅱ). Administration of BBS or NT resulted in further increase of GSH:GSSG ratio in groups Ⅳ and Ⅴ ($P < 0.05$ and $P < 0.001$ *vs* group Ⅲ, respectively) (Table 1).

Oval cell detection and proliferation

Oval cells were present in all specimens studied. In the control and sham operated groups, oval cells were significantly less compared to groups Ⅲ, Ⅳ and Ⅴ ($P < 0.001$, Table 2). In PHx rats (group Ⅲ) they were located in periportal areas and the formation of small ducts was occasionally recorded. Oval cells expressed CK19 (Figure 1A and B), AFP mRNA (Figure 1C and D) and Ki67. When rats subjected to PHx were treated with either BBS (group Ⅳ) or NT (group Ⅴ), the levels of expression of all three molecules were significantly increased compared to group Ⅲ ($P < 0.001$, Table 2).

Proliferation and apoptosis detection in hepatocytes

The proliferation index of hepatocytes was significantly higher in group Ⅲ as compared to groups Ⅰ and Ⅱ ($P < 0.001$, respectively). Administration of BBS or NT in PHx rats induced a significant increase of hepatocyte proliferation in groups Ⅳ and Ⅴ compared to group Ⅲ ($P < 0.001$, respectively, Table 3) (Figure 2A and B).

Table 2 Morphometric analysis of oval cell presence and proliferation (marker-positive oval cells per high power field) (mean ± SD)

Markers	Control (Ⅰ) (*n* = 10)	Sham (Ⅱ) (*n* = 15)	PHx (Ⅲ) (*n* = 15)	PHx + BBS (Ⅳ) (*n* = 15)	PHx + NT (Ⅴ) (*n* = 15)
CK19 protein	1.65 ± 0.31	1.63 ± 0.28	6.22 ± 0.82[a]	18.51 ± 2.31[b]	19.37 ± 3.48[b]
AFP mRNA	1.34 ± 0.25	1.31 ± 0.21	5.45 ± 0.91[a]	16.32 ± 1.81[b]	17.53 ± 4.12[b]
Ki67 protein	1.28 ± 0.14	1.26 ± 0.11	5.22 ± 0.11[a]	15.61 ± 2.54[b]	16.64 ± 3.59[b]

[a]$P < 0.001$ *vs* sham; [b]$P < 0.001$ *vs* partial hepatectomy (PHx). BBS: Bombesin; NT: Neurotensin; AFP: α-fetoprotein.

Table 3 Hepatocytes' proliferation and apoptosis (mean ± SD)

Markers	Control (Ⅰ) (*n* = 10)	Sham (Ⅱ) (*n* = 15)	PHx (Ⅲ) (*n* = 15)	PHx + BBS (Ⅳ) (*n* = 15)	PHx + NT (Ⅴ) (*n* = 15)
Proliferation index	5.95 ± 1.33	6.12 ± 1.64	18.32 ± 3.11[a]	27.25 ± 4.13[b]	25.62 ± 3.41[b]
Apoptotic index	0	0	19.31 ± 4.16[a]	9.24 ± 2.65[b]	8.97 ± 4.14[b]
Proliferation/apoptosis	-	-	0.94 ± 0.74	2.99 ± 1.55[b]	2.85 ± 0.82[b]

[a]$P < 0.001$ *vs* sham; [b]$P < 0.001$ *vs* partial hepatectomy (PHx). BBS: Bombesin; NT: Neurotensin.

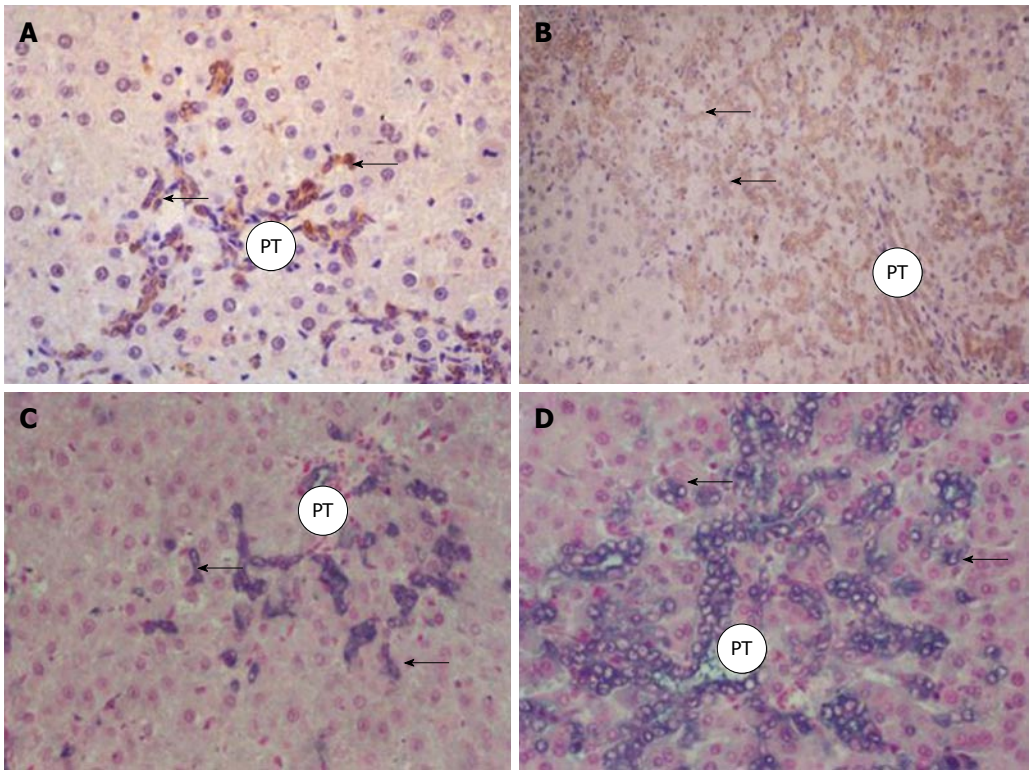


Figure 1 Microphotographs showing expression of CK19 from oval cells (arrows) in livers of group Ⅲ (A) and group Ⅳ (B) and α-fetoprotein mRNA expression from oval cells (arrows) in group Ⅲ (C) and group Ⅳ (D). In group Ⅳ there is higher oval cell presence as demonstrated by both markers [CK19: streptavidin biotin peroxidase (A) × 250, (B) × 100, α-fetoprotein mRNA: *in situ* hybridization × 250]. PT: Portal tract.

In control and sham operated rats, no apoptotic bodies were detected in hepatocytes. After PHx (group Ⅲ), increased apoptotic activity was detected in lobules, whilst administration of BBS or NT significantly decreased the apoptotic index ($P < 0.001$, for groups IV and V compared with group Ⅲ, Table 3) (Figure 2C and D). The proliferation/apoptosis ratio was significantly increased in groups Ⅳ and Ⅴ compared to group Ⅲ ($P < 0.001$, respectively).

DISCUSSION

Effective liver regeneration after extended liver resection or hepatocytic necrosis is of great clinical importance and several experimental studies have focused on the pharmacological augmentation of these process. Experi-

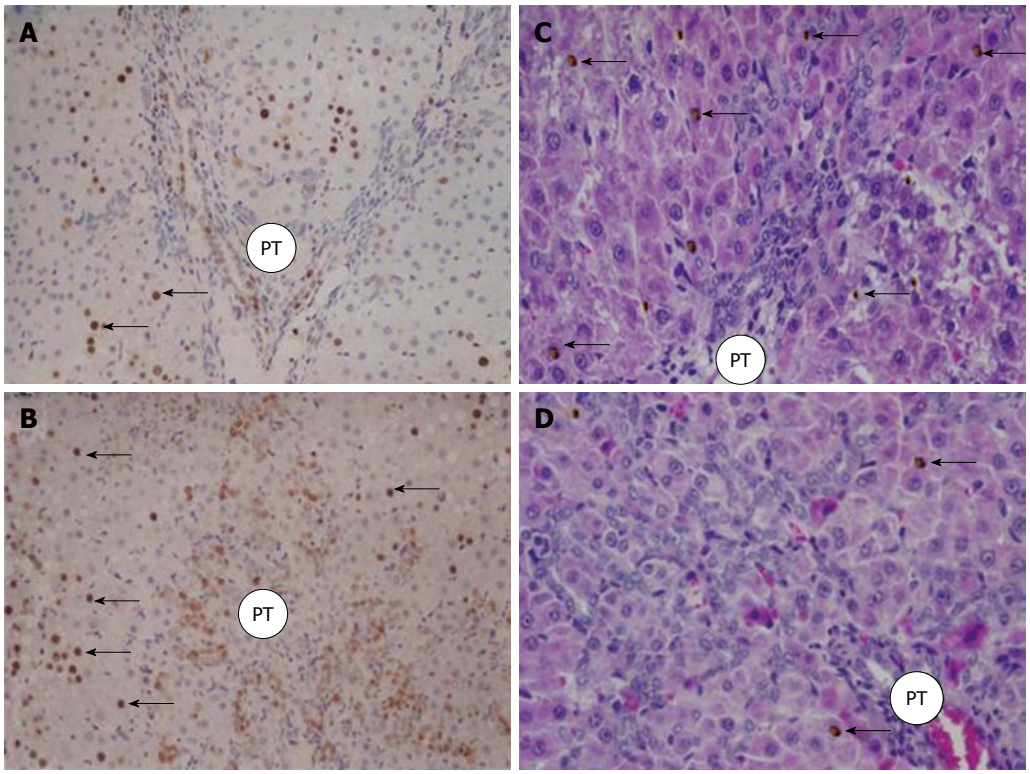


Figure 2 Microphotographs showing Ki67 (+) hepatocytes (arrows) from livers of group Ⅲ (A) and group Ⅳ (B) and TUNEL (+) hepatocytes (arrows) in group Ⅲ (C) and group Ⅳ (D). In group IV there are more Ki67 (+) hepatocytes (streptavidin biotin peroxidase × 100) and less TUNEL (+) hepatocytes (streptavidin biotin peroxidase and hematoxylin eosin × 250). PT: Portal tract.

mentally, the PHx and the carbon tetrachloride administration animal models have been widely used to simulate the clinical conditions of liver resection or hepatocytic necrosis, respectively. Previous studies have unequivocally shown that the hepatocytes are the replicating cells responsible for liver regeneration in these models and that progenitor cell activation leading to lineage generation is not observed during these processes[28]. Despite the low replicative rate of hepatocytes in the normal liver, these highly differentiated cells are not terminally differentiated and replicate in a highly regulated manner after loss of cell or tissue mass[28]. On the other hand, oval cells constitute a transit amplifying cell compartment, which is activated when hepatocyte proliferation is compromised[5,29]. The biological effect of several primary hepatocyte mitogens on hepatocytic proliferation has been extensively studied in experimental models but there are hardly any data about the influence of these compounds on oval cells[10,30,31]. Moreover, to the best of our knowledge, all *in vivo* pharmaceutical trials of oval cell compartment expansion have been conducted in conditions of mature hepatocyte proliferation inhibition, which does not allow safe conclusions on the clear effect of tested compounds on oval cell proliferation and also does not always simulate the clinical situation.

The present study evaluated the effect of the neuropeptides BBS and NT on oval cells and hepatocytes in partially hepatectomized rats, a widely applied model of liver regeneration. The experimental design did not include any treatment with known inhibitors of hepatocyte proliferation as a method for oval cell compartment activation. Therefore, we aimed at evaluating *in vivo* the potential net proliferative effect of tested peptides on oval cells for the first time. The results presented clearly demonstrate the proliferative effect of BBS and NT on oval cells in partially hepatectomized rats in conjunction with improvement of the regenerative response of mature hepatocytes evidenced by promotion of hepatocytes' proliferation and prevention of their apoptosis. Promotion of oval cell proliferation is of great clinical importance profoundly in cases of inhibition of hepatocyte proliferation as this cell type carries on the process of liver repopulation, as well as in cases of effective hepatocyte proliferation, providing a ready cell compartment to continue liver regeneration if a hepatocytic inhibitory insult arises. The presence of hepatic progenitor cells in failed livers at autopsy and in livers removed at transplantation indicates the importance of the efficiency of their regenerative response[32]. Agents that stimulate oval cell proliferation and differentiation, or transplantation of oval cells could be a potent therapeutic modality in the treatment of patients with fatal liver disease, such as fulminant hepatic failure.

In our previous studies with experimentally jaundiced rats, we have shown that BBS and NT attenuated oval cell proliferation in the cholestatic liver, inducing cell type-specific effects on oval cells, hepatocytes and cholangiocytes[26]. The findings of the present study with

promotion of oval cell proliferation suggest that oval cells' response to BBS and NT may be different depending on the type of liver injury. Taking into consideration our previous and current findings, one should assume that neuropeptides' effects on oval cells may be significant for the regeneration of a healthy liver (e.g. in living donor transplantation), but not relevant in an injured liver. However, in our previous experiments with bile duct ligated rats, BBS and NT significantly improved cholestatic liver injury, despite reduction of oval cell proliferation[26]. This finding might reflect the fact that induction of hepatocytes' regenerative response by neuropeptides' action is effective for liver repair in cholestasis, diminishing the role of oval cell participation in this process. On the other hand, in the model of liver regeneration used in the present study, the induction of hepatocytes' regenerative response by BBS and NT might be relatively insufficient for an effective liver repopulation, thus activating the transit amplifying compartment of oval cells.

The biological effects of BBS and NT on hepatic oval cells of rats subjected to PHx may result from direct receptor-mediated action[33,34]. Specific G protein-coupled receptors of BBS and NT have been previously identified in hepatocytes and cholangiocytes[33-35]. Similarly G protein-coupled receptors have been identified in oval cells as well, and their expression has been interrelated with the activation with this stem cell compartment[36]. The growth pathways that govern activation and liver differentiation of liver stem cells after PHx are quite complex and not fully elucidated, involving interplay of diverse cytokines and growth factors such as the hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) and the transforming growth factor (TGF)-β[37]. Although a very rapid increase in tumor necrosis factor-α levels after hepatectomy (possibly endotoxin-induced) is considered as the first step in activation of these growth factors[38], reduction of portal endotoxemia by BBS and NT, demonstrated in the present study, does not preclude the activation of oval cells *via* diverse HGF and TGF dependent pathways. In addition, an indirect mechanism of action of BBS and NT on oval cells in the regenerating liver could exist through the action of other gastrointestinal or systemic hormones released in response to these neuropeptides[39-44].

The present study also demonstrated that BBS and NT enhanced hepatocytes' regenerative response, attributed to increased proliferation and decreased apoptosis of mature hepatocytes and theoretically to increased transition of oval cells to mature hepatocytes. Estimation of hepatocytes' proliferation/apoptosis ratio showed that BBS and NT induced a threefold net increase in proliferating over apoptotic hepatocytes in the regenerating liver. Hepatocytes' apoptosis, which is a major factor of a defective regenerative response, could have been attenuated by neuropeptides administration, either through a direct receptor-mediated mechanism or indirectly through reduction of hepatic oxidative stress and portal endotoxemia shown in the present study, with mechanisms previously reported[24,45]. According to the present and our previous results, liver regeneration takes place under low oxidative stress conditions; however, the further attenuation of hepatic oxidative stress induced by BBS and NT might contribute to the augmentation of the hepatocytes' regenerative response[24].

In conclusion, the present study demonstrates that the neuropeptides BBS and NT exert a net proliferative effect on oval cells in a model of liver regeneration without use of concomitant suppression of hepatocyte proliferation as oval cell activation stimuli. Concurrently, these factors promote hepatocyte proliferation and prevent its apoptosis, thus improving the hepatic regenerative response. Although the results from animal studies should be transferred with much caution in clinical practice, we feel that there is an emerging need for further evaluation of our findings, as the observed pharmacological combined stimulation of hepatocyte and oval cell proliferation might serve as a possible treatment modality for several liver diseases.

COMMENTS

Background

The regenerative response of human liver is of major clinical importance for patients' outcome in a number of diverse clinical conditions. The hepatocyte is the most efficient cell for liver repopulation after injury; however, oval cells participate, possibly as an amplifying transit compartment for hepatocyte differentiation, in processes in which hepatocytes do not respond quickly enough or are unable to respond to proliferative stimuli.

Research frontiers

Pharmacological augmentation of the hepatic regenerative response in diverse types of liver injury has been the topic of intense research for several decades. Improving the efficiency of the regenerative response of liver progenitor cells might have a substantial clinical impact, especially in cases of coexisting inhibition of mature hepatocyte proliferation, such as in viral hepatitis, chemical toxicity and obstructive cholestasis. Up until now, most experimental trials of pharmaceutical expansion of oval cell compartment have been conducted in animal models of mature hepatocyte proliferation inhibition by toxic chemical compounds. However, for therapeutic application a non-toxic activation of this stem cell compartment is required.

Innovations and breakthroughs

The present study evaluated the effect of the neuropeptides bombesin (BBS) and neurotensin (NT) on oval cells and hepatocytes in partially hepatectomized rats, a widely applied model of liver regeneration. The experimental design did not include any treatment with known inhibitors of hepatocyte proliferation as a method for oval cell compartment activation. Therefore, we aimed at evaluating *in vivo* the potential net proliferative effect of the tested peptides on oval cells for the first time. The results presented clearly demonstrate the proliferative effect of BBS and NT on oval cells in partially hepatectomized rats in conjunction with improvement of the regenerative response of mature hepatocytes, evidenced by promotion of hepatocytes' proliferation and prevention of their apoptosis.

Applications

Promotion of oval cell proliferation is of great clinical importance profoundly in cases of inhibition of hepatocyte proliferation as this cell type carries on the process of liver repopulation, as well as in cases of effective hepatocyte proliferation, providing a ready cell compartment to continue liver regeneration if a hepatocytic inhibitory insult arises. BBS and NT promoting oval cell and hepatocyte proliferation could be a potent therapeutic modality in the treatment of patients with several liver diseases, such as fulminant hepatic failure.

Peer review

This is an interesting observational study. The concept is new, the results are robust and may provide potential target for clinical patient care.

REFERENCES

1 **Evarts RP**, Hu Z, Omori N, Omori M, Marsden ER, Thorgeirsson SS. Precursor-product relationship between oval cells and hepatocytes: comparison between tritiated thymidine and bromodeoxyuridine as tracers. *Carcinogenesis* 1996; **17**: 2143-2151

2 **Pintilie DG**, Shupe TD, Oh SH, Salganik SV, Darwiche H, Petersen BE. Hepatic stellate cells' involvement in progenitor-mediated liver regeneration. *Lab Invest* 2010; **90**: 1199-1208

3 **Roskams TA**, Theise ND, Balabaud C, Bhagat G, Bhathal PS, Bioulac-Sage P, Brunt EM, Crawford JM, Crosby HA, Desmet V, Finegold MJ, Geller SA, Gouw AS, Hytiroglou P, Knisely AS, Kojiro M, Lefkowitch JH, Nakanuma Y, Olynyk JK, Park YN, Portmann B, Saxena R, Scheuer PJ, Strain AJ, Thung SN, Wanless IR, West AB. Nomenclature of the finer branches of the biliary tree: canals, ductules, and ductular reactions in human livers. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1739-1745

4 **Kisseleva T**, Gigante E, Brenner DA. Recent advances in liver stem cell therapy. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2010; **26**: 395-402

5 **Petersen BE**, Zajac VF, Michalopoulos GK. Hepatic oval cell activation in response to injury following chemically induced periportal or pericentral damage in rats. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 1030-1038

6 **Paku S**, Schnur J, Nagy P, Thorgeirsson SS. Origin and structural evolution of the early proliferating oval cells in rat liver. *Am J Pathol* 2001; **158**: 1313-1323

7 **Tsamandas AC**, Syrokosta I, Thomopoulos K, Zolota V, Dimitropoulou D, Liava A, Coupoulou AA, Siagris D, Petsas T, Karatza C, Gogos CA. Potential role of hepatic progenitor cells expression in cases of chronic hepatitis C and their relation to response to therapy: a clinicopathologic study. *Liver Int* 2006; **26**: 817-826

8 **Lemire JM**, Shiojiri N, Fausto N. Oval cell proliferation and the origin of small hepatocytes in liver injury induced by D-galactosamine. *Am J Pathol* 1991; **139**: 535-552

9 **Karavias DD**, Tsamandas AC, Tepetes K, Kritikos N, Kourelis T, Ravazoula P, Vagenas K, Siasos N, Mirra N, Bonikos DS. BCL-2 and BAX expression and cell proliferation, after partial hepatectomy with and without ischemia, on cholestatic liver in rats: an experimental study. *J Surg Res* 2003; **110**: 399-408

10 **László V**, Dezso K, Baghy K, Papp V, Kovalszky I, Sáfrány G, Thorgeirsson SS, Nagy P, Paku S. Triiodothyronine accelerates differentiation of rat liver progenitor cells into hepatocytes. *Histochem Cell Biol* 2008; **130**: 1005-1014

11 **Hasuike S**, Ido A, Uto H, Moriuchi A, Tahara Y, Numata M, Nagata K, Hori T, Hayashi K, Tsubouchi H. Hepatocyte growth factor accelerates the proliferation of hepatic oval cells and possibly promotes the differentiation in a 2-acetylaminofluorene/partial hepatectomy model in rats. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **20**: 1753-1761

12 **Piscaglia AC**, Shupe TD, Oh SH, Gasbarrini A, Petersen BE. Granulocyte-colony stimulating factor promotes liver repair and induces oval cell migration and proliferation in rats. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **133**: 619-631

13 **Tsamandas AC**, Antonacopoulou A, Kalogeropoulou C, Tsota I, Zabakis P, Giannopoulou E, Liava A, Tzelepi V, Tepetes K, Petsas T, Kardamakis D, Kalofonos HP. Oval cell proliferation in cirrhosis in rats. An experimental study. *Hepatol Res* 2007; **37**: 755-764

14 **Gyires K**. Neuropeptides and gastric mucosal homeostasis. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2004; **4**: 63-73

15 **Chu KU**, Higashide S, Evers BM, Ishizuka J, Townsend CM, Thompson JC. Bombesin stimulates mucosal growth in jejunal and ileal Thiry-Vella fistulas. *Ann Surg* 1995; **221**: 602-609; discussion 609-611

16 **Evers BM**, Izukura M, Townsend CM, Uchida T, Thompson JC. Differential effects of gut hormones on pancreatic and intestinal growth during administration of an elemental diet. *Ann Surg* 1990; **211**: 630-636; discussion 636-638

17 **Gui X**, Dobner PR, Carraway RE. Endogenous neurotensin facilitates enterohepatic bile acid circulation by enhancing intestinal uptake in rats. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281**: G1413-G1422

18 **Krco CJ**, Gores A, Go VL. Gastrointestinal regulatory peptides modulate mouse lymphocyte functions under serum-free conditions in vitro. *Immunol Invest* 1986; **15**: 103-111

19 **Uluutku AH**, Akin ML, Kurt Y, Yucel E, Cermik H, Avsar K, Celenk T. Bombesin in short bowel syndrome. *J Invest Surg* 2004; **17**: 135-141

20 **Hasegawa K**, Kar S, Carr BI. Stimulation of hepatocyte DNA synthesis by neurotensin. *J Cell Physiol* 1994; **158**: 215-222

21 **Li JY**, Wang L, Zhang XJ. [Cytoprotective effect of neurotensin on acetaminophen induced liver injury in relation to glutathione system]. *Sheng Li Xue Bao* 1994; **46**: 168-175

22 **Cascales M**, Martin-Sanz P, Bosca L. Phorbol esters, bombesin and insulin elicit differential responses on the 6-phosphofructo-2-kinase/fructose-2,6-bisphosphatase system in primary cultures of foetal and adult rat hepatocytes. *Eur J Biochem* 1992; **207**: 391-397

23 **Esparza JL**, Gómez M, Romeu M, Mulero M, Sánchez DJ, Mallol J, Domingo JL. Aluminum-induced pro-oxidant effects in rats: protective role of exogenous melatonin. *J Pineal Res* 2003; **35**: 32-39

24 **Alexandris IH**, Assimakopoulos SF, Vagianos CE, Patsoukis N, Georgiou C, Nikolopoulou V, Scopa CD. Oxidative state in intestine and liver after partial hepatectomy in rats. Effect of bombesin and neurotensin. *Clin Biochem* 2004; **37**: 350-356

25 **Assimakopoulos SF**, Vagianos CE, Zervoudakis G, Filos KS, Georgiou C, Nikolopoulou V, Scopa CD. Gut regulatory peptides bombesin and neurotensin reduce hepatic oxidative stress and histological alterations in bile duct ligated rats. *Regul Pept* 2004; **120**: 185-193

26 **Assimakopoulos SF**, Tsamandas AC, Georgiou CD, Vagianos CE, Scopa CD. Bombesin and neurotensin exert antiproliferative effects on oval cells and augment the regenerative response of the cholestatic rat liver. *Peptides* 2010; **31**: 2294-2303

27 **Higgins GM**, Anderson RM. Experimental pathology of the liver.I. Restoration of the liver of the white rat following partial surgical removal. *Arch Pathol* 1931; **12**: 186-202

28 **Fausto N**, Campbell JS. The role of hepatocytes and oval cells in liver regeneration and repopulation. *Mech Dev* 2003; **120**: 117-130

29 **Sánchez A**, Factor VM, Schroeder IS, Nagy P, Thorgeirsson SS. Activation of NF-kappaB and STAT3 in rat oval cells during 2-acetylaminofluorene/partial hepatectomy-induced liver regeneration. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 376-385

30 **Columbano A**, Shinozuka H. Liver regeneration versus direct hyperplasia. *FASEB J* 1996; **10**: 1118-1128

31 **Nishino M**, Iimuro Y, Ueki T, Hirano T, Fujimoto J. Hepatocyte growth factor improves survival after partial hepatectomy in cirrhotic rats suppressing apoptosis of hepatocytes. *Surgery* 2008; **144**: 374-384

32 **Fujita M**, Furukawa H, Hattori M, Todo S, Ishida Y, Nagashima K. Sequential observation of liver cell regeneration after massive hepatic necrosis in auxiliary partial orthotopic liver transplantation. *Mod Pathol* 2000; **13**: 152-157

33 **Junco M**, Díaz-Guerra MJ, Boscá L. Differential calcium mobilization by vasopressin, angiotensin II, gastrin-releasing peptide, and adenosine triphosphate in adult and fetal hepatocytes. Relevance for the activation of calcium-dependent enzymes. *Endocrinology* 1993; **132**: 309-318

34 **Méndez M**, Souazé F, Nagano M, Kelly PA, Rostène W, Forgez P. High affinity neurotensin receptor mRNA distribution in rat brain and peripheral tissues. Analysis by quantitative RT-PCR. *J Mol Neurosci* 1997; **9**: 93-102

35 **Cho WK**, Boyer JL. Characterization of ion transport mecha-

nisms involved in bombesin-stimulated biliary secretion in rat cholangiocytes. *J Hepatol* 1999; **30**: 1045-1051
36 **Sautin YY**, Jorgensen M, Petersen BE, Saulnier-Blache JS, Crawford JM, Svetlov SI. Hepatic oval (stem) cell expression of endothelial differentiation gene receptors for lysophosphatidic acid in mouse chronic liver injury. *J Hematother Stem Cell Res* 2002; **11**: 643-649
37 **Sánchez A**, Fabregat I. Growth factor- and cytokine-driven pathways governing liver stemness and differentiation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 5148-5161
38 **Nagy P**, Kiss A, Schnur J, Thorgeirsson SS. Dexamethasone inhibits the proliferation of hepatocytes and oval cells but not bile duct cells in rat liver. *Hepatology* 1998; **28**: 423-429
39 **Jensen RT**, Battey JF, Spindel ER, Benya RV. International Union of Pharmacology. LXVIII. Mammalian bombesin receptors: nomenclature, distribution, pharmacology, signaling, and functions in normal and disease states. *Pharmacol Rev* 2008; **60**: 1-42
40 **Dolais-Kitabgi J**, Kitabgi P, Brazeau P, Freychet P. Effect of neurotensin on insulin, glucagon, and somatostatin release from isolated pancreatic islets. *Endocrinology* 1979; **105**: 256-260
41 **Walker JP**, Khalil T, Wiener I, Fagan CJ, Townsend CM, Greeley GH, Thompson JC. The role of neurotensin in human gallbladder motility. *Ann Surg* 1985; **201**: 678-683
42 **Eysselein VE**, Hesse WH, Eberlein GA, Koelbel C, Niebel W, Goebell H. Action of neurotensin on meal-stimulated gastric acid secretion in the dog. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1990; **25**: 29-39
43 **Mazzocchi G**, Malendowicz LK, Rebuffat P, Gottardo G, Nussdorfer GG. Neurotensin stimulates CRH and ACTH release by rat adrenal medulla in vitro. *Neuropeptides* 1997; **31**: 8-11
44 **Printz H**, Göke B, Fehmann HC, Weiershausen S, Nustede R, Neurath M, Rothmund M. Partial hepatectomy affects pancreatic size and function in rats. *Pancreas* 1993; **8**: 233-239
45 **Yoshimoto N**, Togo S, Kubota T, Kamimukai N, Saito S, Nagano Y, Endo I, Sekido H, Nagashima Y, Shimada H. Role of transforming growth factor-beta1 (TGF-beta1) in endotoxin-induced hepatic failure after extensive hepatectomy in rats. *J Endotoxin Res* 2005; **11**: 33-39

S- Editor Wu X **L- Editor** Roemmele A **E- Editor** Zheng XM

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): I
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

Acknowledgments to reviewers of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology*

Many reviewers have contributed their expertise and time to the peer review, a critical process to ensure the quality of *World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology*. The editors and authors of the articles submitted to the journal are grateful to the following reviewers for evaluating the articles (including those published in this issue and those rejected for this issue) during the last editing time period.

Mikihiro Fujiya, Associate Professor, Department of Medicine, Asahikawa Medical University, 2-1-1-1, Midorigaoka-higashi, Asahikawa 0788510, Japan

Jens Hoeppner, Dr., Department of Surgery, University of Freiburg, Hugstetter Str. 55, Freiburg 79106, Germany

Jennifer S Tirnauer, Assistant Professor, Center for Molecular Medicine, University of CT Health Center, Farmington, CT 06030-3101, United States

Ruben Hummelen, Dr., Department of Public Health, Erasmus University Medical Center, Rotterdam 3081HH, The Netherlands

Wai-Keung Chow, MD, Division of gastroenterology, China Medical University Hospital, No. 2 Yu-Der Rd., 400 Taichung, Taiwan, China

Hiroyuki Matsubayashi, MD, PhD, Chief of Pancreatobiliary Endoscopy, Department of Endoscopy, Shizuoka Cancer Center, 1007 Shimonagakubo, Nagaizumi, Suntogun, Shizuoka 411-8777, Japan

Gregory M Holmes, Dr., Department of Neural and Behavioral Sciences, Penn State University College of Medicine, Hershey, PA 17033-0850, United States

Cinzia Domeneghini, Professor, Department of Veterinary Science and Technology for Food Safety, University of Milan, via Celoria 10, Milan I-20133, Italy

Julio Chebli, Professor, Department of Medicine, Federal University of Juiz de Fora, 296 Maria Jose Leal, Juiz de Fora 36036247, Brazil

Alkiviadis Efthymiou, Dr., Bioclinic Private Hospital, 75 Ermou Street, Thessaloniki 54623, Greece

I Michael Leitman, Dr., Chief of General Surgery, Department of Surgery, Albert Einstein College of Medicine-Beth Israel Medical Center, 10 Union Square East, 2M, New York, NY 10003, United States

Yan-Fang Guan, Dr., Easton Hospital, PA, 250 South 21st Street, Easton, MA 18042, United States

Jean-Francois Beaulieu, Professor, Department of Anatomy and Cell Biology, Faculty of Medicine and Health Sciences, Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke, Qué, J1H 5N4, Canada

Maxim S Petrov, Dr., Department of Surgery, The University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland 1142, New Zealand

Richard Hu, Professor, Department of Digestive Diseases, Olive View-UCLA Medical Center, 14445 Olive View Drive, Los Angeles, CA 91342, United States

Mathieu Vinken, Dr., Department of Toxicology, Vrije Universiteit Brussel, Laarbeeklaan 103, Brussels 1090, Belgium

Nicholas C Popescu, Dr., Lab of Experimental Carcinogenesis, National Cancer Institute, Bldg 37, room 4128, Bethesda, MD 20892, United States

Leo Fitzpatrick, Associate Professor, Penn State College of Medicine, 1214 Research Boulevard, Hummelstown, PA 17036, United States

Mitsunori Yamakawa, Professor, Faculty of Medicine, Department of Pathological Diagnostics, Yamagata University, 2-2-2 Iida-Nishi, Yamagata 990-9585, Japan

WJGP

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): I
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

Events Calendar 2011

January 14-15, 2011
AGA Clinical Congress of Gastroenterology and Hepatology: Best Practices in 2011 Miami, FL 33101, United States

January 20-22, 2011
Gastrointestinal Cancers Symposium 2011, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States

January 27-28, 2011
Falk Workshop, Liver and Immunology, Medical University, Franz-Josef-Strauss-Allee 11, 93053 Regensburg, Germany

January 28-29, 2011
9. Gastro Forum München, Munich, Germany

February 13-27, 2011
Gastroenterology: New Zealand CME Cruise Conference, Sydney, NSW, Australia

February 17-20, 2011
APASL 2011-The 21st Conference of the Asian Pacific Association for the Study of the Liver
Bangkok, Thailand

February 24-26, 2011
Inflammatory Bowel Diseases 2011-6th Congress of the European Crohn's and Colitis Organisation, Dublin, Ireland

February 24-26, 2011
International Colorectal Disease Symposium 2011, Hong Kong, China

February 26-March 1, 2011
Canadian Digestive Diseases Week, Westin Bayshore, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

March 03-05, 2011
42nd Annual Topics in Internal Medicine, Gainesville, FL 32614, United States

March 07-11, 2011
Infectious Diseases: Adult Issues in the Outpatient and Inpatient Settings, Sarasota, FL 34234, United States

March 14-17, 2011
British Society of Gastroenterology Annual Meeting 2011, Birmingham, England, United Kingdom

March 17-20, 2011
Mayo Clinic Gastroenterology & Hepatology 2011, Jacksonville, FL 34234, United States

March 25-27, 2011
MedicReS IC 2011 Good Medical Research, Istanbul, Turkey

March 26-27, 2011
26th Annual New Treatments in Chronic Liver Disease, San Diego, CA 94143, United States

April 06-07, 2011
IBS-A Global Perspective, Pfister Hotel, 424 East Wisconsin Avenue, Milwaukee, WI 53202, United States

April 07-09, 2011
International and Interdisciplinary Conference Excellence in Female Surgery, Florence, Italy

April 20-23, 2011
9th International Gastric Cancer Congress, COEX, World Trade Center, Samseong-dong, Gangnam-gu, Seoul 135-731, South Korea

April 25-27, 2011
The Second International Conference of the Saudi Society of Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology & Nutrition, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

April 25-29, 2011
Neurology Updates for Primary Care, Sarasota, FL 34230-6947, United States

April 28-30, 2011
4th Central European Congress of Surgery, Budapest, Hungary

May 07-10, 2011
Digestive Disease Week, Chicago, IL 60446, United States

May 12-13, 2011
2nd National Conference Clinical Advances in Cystic Fibrosis, London, England, United Kingdom

May 19-22, 2011
1st World Congress on Controversies in the Management of Viral Hepatitis (C-Hep), Palau de Congressos de Catalunya, Av. Diagonal, 661-671 Barcelona 08028, Spain

May 25-28, 2011
4th Congress of the Gastroenterology Association of Bosnia and Herzegovina with international participation, Hotel Holiday Inn, Sarajevo, Bosnia and Herzegovina

June 11-12, 2011
The International Digestive Disease Forum 2011, Hong Kong, China

June 13-16, 2011
Surgery and Disillusion XXIV SPIGC, II ESYS, Napoli, Italy

June 22-25, 2011
ESMO Conference: 13th World Congress on Gastrointestinal Cancer, Barcelona, Spain

September 2-3, 2011 Falk Symposium 178, Diverticular Disease, A Fresh Approach to a Neglected Disease, Gürzenich Cologne, Martinstr. 29-37, 50667 Cologne, Germany

September 10-11, 2011
New Advances in Inflammatory Bowel Disease, La Jolla, CA 92093, United States

September 30-October 1, 2011
Falk Symposium 179, Revisiting IBD Management: Dogmas to be Challenged, Sheraton Brussels Hotel, Place Rogier 3, 1210 Brussels, Belgium

October 19-29, 2011
Cardiology & Gastroenterology Tahiti 10 night CME Cruise, Papeete, French Polynesia

October 22-26, 2011
19th United European Gastroenterology Week, Stockholm, Sweden

November 11-12, 2011
Falk Symposium 180, IBD 2011: Progress and Future for Lifelong Management, ANA Interconti Hotel, 1-12-33 Akasaka, Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-0052, Japan

December 01-04, 2011
2011 Advances in Inflammatory Bowel Diseases/Crohn's & Colitis Foundation's Clinical & Research Conference, Hollywood, FL 34234, United States

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

Online Submissions: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office
wjgp@wjgnet.com
www.wjgnet.com

World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol 2011 December 15; 2(6): I-V
ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology (*World J Gastrointest Pathophysiol*, *WJGP*, online ISSN 2150-5330, DOI: 10.4291), is a bimonthly, open-access (OA), peer-reviewed journal supported by an editorial board of 296 experts in gastrointestinal pathophysiology from 39 countries.

The biggest advantage of the OA model is that it provides free, full-text articles in PDF and other formats for experts and the public without registration, which eliminates the obstacle that traditional journals possess and usually delays the speed of the propagation and communication of scientific research results.

Maximization of personal benefits

The role of academic journals is to exhibit the scientific levels of a country, a university, a center, a department, and even a scientist, and build an important bridge for communication between scientists and the public. As we all know, the significance of the publication of scientific articles lies not only in disseminating and communicating innovative scientific achievements and academic views, as well as promoting the application of scientific achievements, but also in formally recognizing the "priority" and "copyright" of innovative achievements published, as well as evaluating research performance and academic levels. So, to realize these desired attributes of *WJGP* and create a well-recognized journal, the following four types of personal benefits should be maximized. The maximization of personal benefits refers to the pursuit of the maximum personal benefits in a well-considered optimal manner without violation of the laws, ethical rules and the benefits of others. (1) Maximization of the benefits of editorial board members: The primary task of editorial board members is to give a peer review of an unpublished scientific article via online office system to evaluate its innovativeness, scientific and practical values and determine whether it should be published or not. During peer review, editorial board members can also obtain cutting-edge information in that field at first hand. As leaders in their field, they have priority to be invited to write articles and publish commentary articles. We will put peer reviewers' names and affiliations along with the article they reviewed in the journal to acknowledge their contribution; (2) Maximization of the benefits of authors: Since *WJGP* is an open-access journal, readers around the world can immediately download and read, free of charge, high-quality, peer-reviewed articles from *WJGP* official website, thereby realizing the goals and significance of the communication between authors and peers as well as public reading; (3) Maximization of the benefits of readers: Readers can read or use, free of charge, high-quality peer-reviewed articles without any limits, and cite the arguments, viewpoints, concepts, theories, methods, results, conclusion or facts and data of pertinent literature so as to validate the innovativeness, scientific and practical values of their own research achievements, thus ensuring that their articles have novel arguments or viewpoints, solid evidence and correct conclusion; and (4) Maximization of the benefits of employees: It is an iron law that a first-class journal is unable to exist without first-class editors, and only first-class editors can create a first-class academic journal. We insist on strengthening our team cultivation and construction so that every employee, in an open, fair and transparent environment, could contribute their wisdom to edit and publish high-quality articles, thereby realizing the maximization of the personal benefits of editorial board members, authors and readers, and yielding the greatest social and economic benefits.

Aims and scope

The major task of *WJGP* is to report rapidly the most recent results in basic and clinical research on gastrointestinal pathophysiology, including all aspects of normal or abnormal function of the gastrointestinal tract, hepatobiliary system, and pancreas. *WJGP* specifically covers growth and development, digestion, secretion, absorption, metabolism and motility relative to the gastrointestinal organs, as well as immune and inflammatory processes, and neural, endocrine and circulatory control mechanisms that affect these organs. This journal will also report new methods and techniques in gastrointestinal pathophysiological research.

Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJGP* will include: (1) Editorial: To introduce and comment on major advances and developments in the field; (2) Frontier: To review representative achievements, comment on the state of current research, and propose directions for future research; (3) Topic Highlight: This column consists of three formats, including (A) 10 invited review articles on a hot topic, (B) a commentary on common issues of this hot topic, and (C) a commentary on the 10 individual articles; (4) Observation: To update the development of old and new questions, highlight unsolved problems, and provide strategies on how to solve the questions; (5) Guidelines for Basic Research: To provide guidelines for basic research; (6) Guidelines for Clinical Practice: To provide guidelines for clinical diagnosis and treatment; (7) Review: To review systemically progress and unresolved problems in the field, comment on the state of current research, and make suggestions for future work; (8) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in gastrointestinal pathophysiology; (9) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in gastrointestinal pathophysiology; (10) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (11) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJGP*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (12) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of gastrointestinal pathophysiology; and (13) Guidelines: To introduce consensuses and guidelines reached by international and national academic authorities worldwide on basic research and clinical practice in gastrointestinal pathophysiology.

Name of journal

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology

ISSN

ISSN 2150-5330 (online)

Indexing/abstracting

PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifer, and Directory

of Open Access Journals.

Published by
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited

SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

Biostatistical editing
Statisital review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics from to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc*. The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

Conflict-of-interest statement
In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJGP* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html.

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

Statement of informed consent
Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

Statement of human and animal rights
When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should comform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now available, to our knowledge, is http://www. clinicaltrials.gov sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

Online submissions
Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330office/. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080008.htm) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to wjgp@wjgnet.com, or by telephone: +86-10-59080038. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page
Title: Title should be less than 12 words.

Running title: A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

Authorship: Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by International Committee of Medical Journal Editors, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

Institution: Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece.

Author contributions: The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

Supportive foundations: The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, e.g., Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801.

Correspondence to: Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province, country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu

Telephone and fax: Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, e.g., Telephone: +86-10-59080039 Fax: +86-10-85381893

Peer reviewers: All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision for acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend an article for publication. Reviewers for accepted manuscripts are acknowledged in each manuscript, and reviewers of articles which were not accepted will be acknowledged at the end of each issue. To ensure the quality of the articles published in *WJGP*, reviewers of accepted manuscripts will be announced by publishing the name, title/position and institution of the reviewer in the footnote accompanying the printed article. For example, reviewers: Professor Jing-Yuan Fang, Shanghai Institute of Digestive Disease, Shanghai, Affiliated Renji Hospital, Medical Faculty, Shanghai Jiaotong University, Shanghai, China; Professor Xin-Wei Han, Department of Radiology, The First Affiliated Hospital, Zhengzhou University, Zhengzhou, Henan Province, China; and Professor Anren Kuang, Department of Nuclear Medicine, Huaxi Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu, Sichuan Province, China.

Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no more than 256 words) and structured abstracts (no more than 480). The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstracts of no more than 480 words should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts for original contributions should be structured into the following sections. AIM (no more than 20 words): Only the purpose should be included. Please write the aim as the form of "To investigate/study/…; MATERIALS AND METHODS (no more than 140 words); RESULTS (no more than 294 words): You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, e.g. 6.92 ± 3.86 *vs* 3.61 ± 1.67, $P < 0.001$; CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

Text

For articles of these sections, original articles, rapid communication and case reports, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both. The main text format of these sections, editorial, topic highlight, case report, letters to the editors, can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080000.htm.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Figures should be either Photoshop or Illustrator files (in tiff, eps, jpeg formats) at high-resolution. Examples can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4520.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4554.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4891.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4986.pdf; http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/13/4498.pdf. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Patholo gical changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: …*etc.* It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the printed and E-versions.

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, *etc.*, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P < 0.05$, $^{b}P < 0.01$ should be noted ($P > 0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of *P* values, $^{c}P < 0.05$ and $^{d}P < 0.01$ are used. A third series of *P* values can be expressed as $^{e}P < 0.05$ and $^{f}P < 0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc.*, in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and

conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references[19,22-24], we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

PMID and DOI

Pleased provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, e.g. PMID and DOI, which can be found at http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed and http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in boldfaced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in boldfaced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hyper tension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMCID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Statistical data

Write as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as υ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, p (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation)

= 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2, not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantums can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100107160355.htm.

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.
Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*
Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*
Biology: *H. pylori*, *E coli*, *etc.*

Examples for paper writing

Editorial: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080010.htm

Frontier: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316102300.htm

Topic highlight: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080012.htm

Observation: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080004.htm

Guidelines for basic research: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316103422.htm

Guidelines for clinical practice: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316103458.htm

Review: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080006.htm

Original articles: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316080000.htm

Brief articles: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316105425.htm

Case report: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100107153410.htm
Letters to the editor: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100107154228.htm

Book reviews: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316105850.htm

Guidelines: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100316105919.htm

SUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS AFTER ACCEPTED

Please revise your article according to the revision policies of *WJGP*. The revised version including manuscript and high-resolution image figures (if any) should be copied on a floppy or compact disk. The author should send the revised manuscript, along with printed high-resolution color or black and white photos, copyright transfer letter, and responses to the reviewers by courier (such as EMS/DHL).

Editorial Office

World Journal of Gastrointestinal Pathophysiology
Editorial Department: Room 903, Building D,
Ocean International Center,
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu,
Chaoyang District, Beijing 100025, China
E-mail: wjgp@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com
Telephone: +86-10-8538-1892
Fax: +86-10-8538-1893

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A or B.

Copyright assignment form

Please download a Copyright assignment form from http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100107155448.htm.

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: http://www.wjgnet.com/2150-5330/g_info_20100107154656.htm.

Proof of financial support

For paper supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the document and serial number of the foundation.

Links to documents related to the manuscript

WJGP will be initiating a platform to promote dynamic interactions between the editors, peer reviewers, readers and authors. After a manuscript is published online, links to the PDF version of the submitted manuscript, the peer-reviewers' report and the revised manuscript will be put on-line. Readers can make comments on the peer reviewer's report, authors' responses to peer reviewers, and the revised manuscript. We hope that authors will benefit from this feedback and be able to revise the manuscript accordingly in a timely manner.

Science news releases

Authors of accepted manuscripts are suggested to write a science news item to promote their articles. The news will be released rapidly at EurekAlert/AAAS (http://www.eurekalert.org). The title for news items should be less than 90 characters; the summary should be less than 75 words; and main body less than 500 words. Science news items should be lawful, ethical, and strictly based on your original content with an attractive title and interesting pictures.

Publication fee

WJGP is an international, peer-reviewed, Open-Access, online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. The related standards are as follows. Publication fee: 1300 USD per article. Editorial, topic highlights, original articles, book reviews and letters to the editor are published free of charge.